

全国高等职业教育规划教材·旅游与酒店管理专业

旅游实用英语

徐 琳 单 萍 主编

陈晓霞 副主编

電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京·BEIJING

内 容 简 介

本书是一本集知识性、实践性和趣味性于一体的旅游英语教学用书,旨在帮助旅游专业学生和旅游从业者掌握旅游英语地道的表达方式,提高业务素质。

全书按照主题分为12个单元,涵盖了旅游相关的主要内容,包括日程安排、接待、住宿、餐饮、购物、建筑、宗教、节日、主要景点介绍等旅游话题,每个单元紧紧围绕一个主题,安排了5项活动:听力入门、情景会话、专题阅读、实用写作、沟通案例,涉及听、说、读、写、译等能力训练,提供了地道、实用的旅游素材,模拟旅游实务,通过情景会话、模拟解说、翻译、写作等练习形式帮助学生学习原汁原味的旅游英语。

中西方文化差异是涉外活动中的难点,也是本书的亮点。本书提供了沟通失误的典型案例分析,有助于提高从业者的跨文化交际能力,满足了当前市场的需求。

本书适用于旅游专业学生以及有志于从事导游及酒店管理工作的人士。为了方便涉外导游以及相关专业知识学生自修,本书为专题阅读部分提供了参考译文以及全部练习答案,并为听说部分的资料配备了mp3格式的音频文件。

未经许可,不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有,侵权必究。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

旅游实用英语 / 徐琳, 单萍主编—北京: 电子工业出版社, 2009.1

全国高等职业教育规划教材·旅游与酒店管理专业

ISBN 978-7-121-07571-1

I. 旅… II. ①徐…②单… III. 旅游—英语—高等学校: 技术学校—教材 IV. H31

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2008)第 161672 号

策划编辑: 张云怡

责任编辑: 贾瑞敏

印 刷:

装 订:

出版发行: 电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路 173 信箱 邮编 100036

开 本: 787×1 092 1/16 印张: 11 字数: 281.6 千字

印 次: 2009 年 1 月第 1 次印刷

印 数: 4 000 册 定价: 22.00 元

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题,请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺,请与本社发行部联系,联系及邮购电话:(010) 88254888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zltz@phei.com.cn, 盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

服务热线:(010) 88258888。

前 言

据世界贸易组织预测：到 2020 年底，中国将成为世界第一旅游大国。2008 年北京奥运会的成功举办和全球经济一体化格局的形成，为我国旅游业的发展带来了前所未有的机遇和挑战。面对迅速崛起的中国旅游业，出版地道、实用的旅游英语教材已成为旅游教育的当务之急。

针对高端旅游市场，全方位的旅游服务不仅应做到细致周到，更要注重中西方文化的沟通。通过旅游传递友谊、传承文化、增进彼此间的了解和信任，这是本书区别于其他相关教学用书的特色。本书注重旅游实务，除了日程安排、住宿、餐饮、购物、主要景点介绍等旅游话题之外，中西方文化差异将成为同类丛书中的亮点，本书提供的沟通失误的典型案例，有助于提高从业者的跨文化交际能力，以满足高端市场的需求。

本书适用于旅游管理专业《旅游英语》课程以及有志于从事导游及酒店管理工作的人士。全书共分 12 个单元，每个单元紧紧围绕一个主题，通过听力入门、情景会话、专题阅读、实用写作、沟通案例五个部分培养学生旅游专业实用技能，具体安排如下：

听力入门：提供原汁原味的听力素材。

情景会话：提供真实场景的实用对话。

专题阅读：探索旅游目的地的文化背景。

实用写作：展示旅游英语宣传推介活动样本。

沟通案例：介绍跨文化沟通的典型案例。

中国是个文化旅游资源十分丰富的国家，旅游市场潜力巨大。希望本教材能够成为沟通中西方文化的桥梁，为旅游英语教材建设尽微薄之力。

本书由徐琳(东北财经大学职业技术学院)、单萍（大连海事大学）任主编，陈晓霞（大连海事大学）任副主编。其中第 1 单元、第 2 单元和第 3 单元由徐琳编写，第 4 单元、第 5 单元、第 6 单元和第 7 单元由陈晓霞编写，第 8 单元、第 9 单元、第 10 单元、第 11 单元和第 12 单元由单萍编写。

本书的听说部分配有 mp3 格式的音频文件，读者可以到“华信教育资源网（www.huaxin.edu.cn）”免费下载。为了方便涉外导游以及相关专业学生自修，本书为专题阅读部分提供了参考译文以及课后习题答案。

由于时间仓促，作者水平有限，书中难免存在错误和不足之处，敬请广大读者批评指正。

编 者
2008 年 10 月

CONTENTS

Unit 1	Tour Arrangement	(1)
Part I	Listening	(1)
Part II	Speaking	(2)
	Dialogue 1 A Telephone Enquiry about <i>Beijing</i>	(2)
	Dialogue 2 Talking about the Itinerary	(3)
Part III	Reading	(6)
	Text A Package Tour	(6)
	Text B Summer Holiday	(8)
Part IV	Writing	(9)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(11)
Unit 2	Hotel Service	(12)
Part I	Listening	(12)
Part II	Speaking	(13)
	Dialogue 1 Meeting the Guest at the Airport	(13)
	Dialogue 2 Check in, please	(14)
Part III	Reading	(15)
	Text A Welcome Speech	(15)
	Text B The Palace Museum	(17)
Part IV	Writing	(21)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(22)
Unit 3	Chinese Cuisine	(23)
Part I	Listening	(23)
Part II	Speaking	(24)
	Dialogue 1 We Would Like Typical Chinese Cuisine	(24)
	Dialogue 2 An Informal Chinese Meal	(24)
Part III	Reading	(26)
	Text A Chinese Cuisine	(26)
	Text B Eight Chinese Cuisine	(28)
Part IV	Writing	(31)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(31)
Unit 4	City Tour	(33)
Part I	Listening	(33)
Part II	Speaking	(34)
	Dialogue 1 <i>Xi'an</i>	(34)
	Dialogue 2 <i>Sanya</i>	(35)
Part III	Reading	(36)

Text A	<i>Shanghai</i>	(36)
Text B	The Great Wall	(37)
Part IV	Writing	(38)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(39)
Unit 5	Ancient Chinese Architecture	(40)
Part I	Listening	(40)
Part II	Speaking	(41)
	Dialogue 1 <i>Hangzhou</i>	(41)
	Dialogue 2 The Palace Museum	(42)
Part III	Reading	(44)
	Text A Ancient Chinese Architecture	(44)
	Text B The Terra-Cotta Legions	(46)
Part IV	Writing	(47)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(48)
Unit 6	Chinese Landscape Gardening	(50)
Part I	Listening	(50)
Part II	Speaking	(51)
	Dialogue 1 <i>Suzhou</i>	(51)
	Dialogue 2 The Yu Garden	(52)
Part III	Reading	(54)
	Text A Chinese Landscape Gardening	(54)
	Text B Features of Chinese Gardens	(57)
Part IV	Writing	(59)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(60)
Unit 7	Religion in China	(62)
Part I	Listening	(62)
Part II	Speaking	(63)
	Dialogue 1 Visiting the Jade Buddha Temple	(63)
	Dialogue 2 <i>Lingyin</i> Temple	(64)
Part III	Reading	(66)
	Text A Major Religions in China	(66)
	Text B Religions & Beliefs	(68)
Part IV	Writing	(69)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(70)
Unit 8	Traditional Chinese Festivals	(72)
Part I	Listening	(72)
Part II	Speaking	(73)
	Dialogue 1 The Dragon Boat Festival	(73)
	Dialogue 2 The Mid-Autumn Festival	(74)
Part III	Reading	(75)

Text A	Traditional Chinese Festivals	(75)
Text B	Traditional Festivals in China	(78)
Part IV	Writing	(81)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(82)
Unit 9	Tours of Natural Scenery	(84)
Part I	Listening	(84)
Part II	Speaking	(85)
	Dialogue 1 <i>Huaqing</i> Pool	(85)
	Dialogue 2 The Three Gorges of the Yangtze River	(86)
Part III	Reading	(88)
	Text A A Visit to <i>Wuyi</i> Mountains	(88)
	Text B <i>Guilin</i>	(91)
Part IV	Writing	(92)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(93)
Unit 10	Entertainment	(95)
Part I	Listening	(95)
Part II	Speaking	(96)
	Dialogue 1 Talking about the Recreation and Fitness Center	(96)
	Dialogue 2 Booking Tickets for <i>Beijing</i> Opera	(96)
Part III	Reading	(98)
	Text A The Tea Ceremony	(98)
	Text B Traditional Chinese Opera	(99)
Part IV	Writing	(100)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(101)
Unit 11	Shopping	(103)
Part I	Listening	(103)
Part II	Speaking	(104)
	Dialogue 1 Shopping for Traditional Chinese Paintings	(104)
	Dialogue 2 At the Souvenir Department	(105)
Part III	Reading	(107)
	Text A Creating a Shoppers' Paradise	(107)
	Text B The Best Buy in China	(108)
Part IV	Writing	(109)
Part V	Cultural Tips	(110)
Unit 12	Farewell	(112)
Part I	Listening	(112)
Part II	Speaking	(113)
	Dialogue 1 Farewell at the Airport	(113)
	Dialogue 2 Bon Voyage	(114)
Part III	Reading	(115)

Text A A Farewell Speech (115)

Text B Passenger Information (117)

Part IV Writing..... (118)

Part V Cultural Tips (119)

Appendix A..... (121)

Appendix B..... (127)

Appendix C (145)

Appendix D (158)

参考文献..... (163)

Unit 1

Tour Arrangement

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to deal with a telephone enquiry
- read what a package tour is and its development
- write an itinerary and talk about the tour
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

1. Harry Porter will stay three days in *Nanjing*.
2. It is alright that Mr. Porter arrives at airport before 8 o'clock that morning.
3. Mr. Porter will return to *Dalian* in the afternoon of 18Oct.
4. Mr. Porter has booked a single room in a five-star hotel.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Conversation 1

5. What does the woman want to consult?
6. What's the woman's opinion about the guided tour round *Nanjing*?

Conversation 2

7. What kind of trip does the speaker want to take?
8. Which city will the speaker go?
9. How much does the trip cost?

Task 3

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

A Ceremonial Speech at a Chinese Dinner Party

Ladies and gentlemen: It's a great pleasure to have you all here this evening. _____ (1) the

China Textile Import and Export Company, I'd like to extend a _____(2) welcome to you all. Welcome to *Beijing*! Welcome to the trade fair!

I also want to take this _____(3) to express my thanks for the close cooperation and kind support our friends have given us over the years.

Now, I'd like you to _____(4) me in a toast: To the success of the fair! To our friendship and cooperation! To the _____(5) of everyone! Cheers!



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: A Telephone Enquiry about *Beijing*

(A travel agent deals with a telephone enquiry about *Beijing*.)

(A—Travel Agent; C—Customer)

A: Good morning, China International Travel Service *Dalian* Branch, *Yang Lin* speaking. What can I do for you?

C: Hello, I saw your advert in the newspaper for fly-drive holidays in *Beijing*. Does that mean you get flights, accommodation and car hire all included in the price?

A: That's right, madam.

C: My husband and I want to see the places of interest in *Beijing*. Can you arrange a tour for us?

A: How long would you like to stay in *Beijing*?

C: Well, four days.

A: There is a four-day package tour. You will have 4 full days in *Beijing*. The itinerary includes places of interest such as the Great Wall, *Ming* Tombs, the Forbidden City, Temple of Heaven, the Summer Palace, *Hutong* and *Lama* Temple.

C: That sounds good. How much is the tour?

A: That all depends on when you travel. When are you thinking of going, madam?

C: Well, some time when it's quieter, the second half of October. Is it off-season then?

A: Yes, it is. That's a very good time to go. We have a great offer at the moment: RMB2000 for each person.

C: Could I book it now?

A: Certainly. May I have the names of the people traveling, please?

C: There's me, Jane Wright and my husband Simon.

A: Could you spell your surname for me, Mrs. Wright?

C: Yes, That's W-R-I-G-H-T.

A: OK, thank you. Just let me confirm the details.

Notes

1. advert ['ædvə:t] =advertisement (英口) 广告
2. off-season (旅游) 淡季
3. busy season 旺季

Dialogue 2: Talking about the Itinerary

(A tour guide comes to see the head of an American tourist group.)

(G—Tour Guide; L—Tour Leader)

G: Did you sleep well last night?

L: Oh, yes. I had a sound sleep. How about you?

G: Very well, too.

L: How is the itinerary you've prepared for our group? Did you receive the fax that we sent to your company?

G: Yes, I did. Here is a copy of the itinerary I've prepared for your group. Please read it carefully to see if there is a need for any changes.

L: (*Reading the itinerary*) We're visiting a *hutong* in *Beijing*. That's marvelous. I'm sure everyone in the group will be excited to learn about the visit.

G: A visit to a university in *Beijing* has also been arranged at your request. At the university, you will be meeting not only the administrators, but professors and students. Most of them are proficient in English, so your friends can talk to them directly.

L: That's good. Mr. and Mrs. Johnson and two other couples, in particular, will appreciate the opportunity because they used to teach at a university.

G: Your fax also requests going to church on a Sunday. That will be done when your group is in *Hangzhou*. As to the request of the journalist in your group who wants to interview a governor or mayor, I'm afraid that is difficult to satisfy.

L: May I know why?

G: Our government has made it clear that when a foreign journalist visits China in the capacity of a tourist, he or she will not enjoy any of the privileges that are granted to journalists, such as the chance to interview a government official.

L: That sounds reasonable.

G: If necessary, I can explain to him the difficulty involved in making the special arrangement on his behalf.

- L: That's very kind of you.
- G: I think that some of your friends may have their own needs and wants, likes and dislikes. Shall we make it a rule for them to go to you first if they have any individual requests to make? Or shall we allow them to approach me directly?
- L: I've already told them to come to me if they have any special requests.
- G: That's very considerate of you. Still, please assure your friends that I'll be doing all that is within my power to make your visit to China a pleasant experience.
- L: Thank you.
- G: Thank you for your understanding and cooperation. Shall I say that we have finalized the itinerary?
- L: Yes.

Notes

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. itinerary [ai'tinərəri] adj. | 行程表, 活动安排 |
| 2. at your request | 按照你的要求 |
| 3. administrator [əd'minis'treɪtə] n. | 管理人, 行政人员 |
| 4. proficient [prə'fɪʃənt] adj. | 精通的; 熟练的 |
| 5. governor ['gʌvənə] n. | (中国) 省长, (美国) 州长 |
| 6. in the capacity of a tourist | 以一个旅游者的身份 |
| 7. within my power | 尽我所能 |
| 8. finalize the itinerary | 最终敲定活动计划 |

Professional Practice

The following telephone enquiry tips are useful when answering the telephone.

- introduce yourself and offer to be of assistance

Good afternoon, CITS Shanghai Branch, Wang Ming speaking.

How can I help you?

- be enthusiastic

That's a very good time to go.

We have a great offer at the moment.

- make sure you get all the necessary information

Can I have the names of the people traveling, please?

Could you spell your surname for me, please?

- repeat names, phone numbers and details to make sure everything has been understood

Just let me confirm the details.

Is that correct?

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(W—Wanda, a travel agent is dealing with telephone enquiry; C—Caller)

W: Good afternoon, 1 (我是 Wanda) .

C: Hello, is that City Travel?

W: Yes, how 2 (需要帮忙吗)?

C: I'd like to book a city break in *Guangzhou* please, as advertised in your brochure. It's on page 19.

W: Right. 3 (您想什么时候旅行)?

C: May 14th for three nights.

W: May 14th . Fine. For three nights.

C: That's right. Leaving from *Pudong*. We're staying in *Shanghai* on the 13th.

W: 4 (好的, 我查一下) availability. Sorry to keep you waiting. The computer's just going to be a few seconds. OK, here we are. 5 (您想什么时间走)?

C: Early morning if possible.

W: Fine, 6 (有一个在 9:10 起飞的航班) .

C: Yes, that sounds OK. How long does the flight last?

W: 7 (需要 2 小时 25 分). With check-in an hour beforehand. And then back on the 17th. There's a flight at 17:10 or 18:05.

C: The later one, please.

W: OK. 8 (就您自己旅行吗)?

C: Yes, it is.

W: 9 (我能知道些详细情况吗)? Can you tell me your name, please?

C: Yes, it's Hunter, Gary Hunter

W: H-U-N-T-E-R?

C: That's right.

W: And your telephone number, Mr. Hunter?

C: 09902 57731.

W: 09902 57731. And 10 (您选了哪家宾馆)?

C: The Holiday Inn seems to be very good.

W: Yes, that's right. It's a lovely hotel. I'm sure you'll like it. And 11 (是单间吗)?

C: Yes.

W: Right. OK. So that's three nights from 14 May for Mr.G.Hunter, staying at the Holiday Inn, departure Pudong, return from *Baiyun* airport on the 17th. The price is RMB 2000 in all. Do you have a pen and paper?

C: Hang on. OK.

W: I'm just going to give you your booking reference number. It's BT 8825. I'll prepare everything for you. And 12 (您怎样付款)?



Part III Reading

Text A Package Tour

With the improvement of living standard, the working week becoming shorter and the vacations increasing, more and more people are able to make a holiday trip to places of interest. As far as the holiday trip is concerned, there are different ways of travel: package tour, self-drive, and backpacking. It is one thing to decide to go on a tour, but quite another to organize the trip. Many people don't have the time or the inclination to plan a tour for themselves. They prefer to have somebody else make the decisions and the arrangements, hence the package tour. A package tour offers travelers prearranged transportation, accommodations, meals and other vacation preparations—all at predetermined price.

The innovator of the organized package tour was Thomas Cook, a Baptist missionary from England, who chartered a train in 1841 to carry 570 people to temperance meeting. This first tour had a number of features that were to become standards for later package tours, including transportation, meals, entertainment, an event, and a tour escort.

A package tour is a combination of several travel components provided by different suppliers which are sold to the consumer as a single product at a single price. The package tour is typically comprised of two or more of the following components: one or more forms of transportation (including fly-drive, fly-cruise, motor-coach tour, and rail tour packages); accommodations; meals; attractions and events (including sightseeing and admission to natural and commercial attractions, entertainment, recreation, and a variety of special events); and extras (including transfers and baggage handling, tips and taxes, the services of a professional tour manager and tour guides, travel bags, and discount coupons for restaurants and shops).

The package tour industry is one of the fastest-growing sectors of the travel industry. Why have package tours become so popular? The main reason is that they offer a variety of practical benefits that independent travel cannot provide. Firstly, when travelers buy a package tour, they are also buying peace of mind. A package tour takes the anxiety out of traveling because all arrangements have been made in advance by the tour operator. People need not to worry about they will miss any famous tourist spots since the provided tourist guide have the experience to know which attractions are worth a special trip. Moreover, he'll explain the history of the spots to make tourists enjoy the beautiful spots better. Secondly, the single greatest attraction of the package tour is its relatively low cost. All package tours are prepaid; the client can fairly accurately calculate the total cost of the tour in advance. Besides, on a package tour, the traveler does not have to spend time looking for accommodations, arranging transfers, or getting tickets for a show.

In short, package tours take some of the annoying things out of travel and usually provide significant cost savings as well. Time saving, together with increased prosperity and low airfares, has brought overseas travel within the reach of ordinary working people who have only

a few weeks of annual vacation. International travel is no longer the exclusive privilege of a wealthy few.

Words and Expressions

(1) prearrange [priə'reindʒ] v.	预先安排
(2) accommodation [ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən] n.	食宿
(3) predetermine [pri:'di:tə:min] v.	预先决定
(4) innovator ['inəuveitə] n.	创新者
(5) charter ['tʃɑ:tə] v.	包租（飞机、轮船等）
(6) feature ['fi:tʃə] n.& v.	特征，特色；以……为特色
(7) entertainment [entə'teɪnmənt] n.	招待客人的娱乐活动
(8) combination [ˌkɒmbɪ'neɪʃən] n.	混合，结合体
(9) component [kəm'pəʊnənt] n.	成分
(10) extra ['ekstrə] n.	另外收费的项目；额外物
(11) coupon ['ku:pən] n.	商家的优惠券
(12) relatively ['relətɪvli] adv.	相对地；相当地
(13) accurately ['ækjʊrɪtli] adv.	精确地
(14) calculate ['kælkjuleɪt] v.	计算；打算
(16) significant [sɪg'nɪfɪkənt] adj.	显著的，有效的；有意义的
(17) prosperity [prɒs'perɪti] n.	繁荣；富足；成功
(18) as far as...be concerned	就……而言
(19) be comprised of	包含，由……构成
(20) in advance	预先
(21) spend...doing sth.	花（时间、金钱等）做某事
(22) be worth (doing) sth.	值得（做）……
(23) in short	简而言之，总之
(24) within the reach of	为某人的能力、影响等所能及

Notes

1. There are different ways of travel: package tour, self-drive, and backpacking. 有不同的旅行方式：随团旅游，自驾游和背包徒步游。

2. A package tour offers travelers prearranged transportations, accommodations, meals and other vacation preparations—all at predetermined price. 在预定价格内，包价旅游为旅游者提供预先安排好的交通、膳宿及其他度假准备工作。

3. Thomas Cook: 托马斯·库克（被誉为旅游业的先驱者，1841 年，他以包租火车的方式组织了 570 人乘火车参加一个禁酒大会，这次活动被后人视为近代旅游业的开端。）

4. Baptist missionary 浸礼会教徒

5. International travel is no longer the exclusive privilege of a wealthy few. 跨国旅游不再是少数有钱人专有的特权。

6. tour operator: 旅游代理商；tour escort: 旅游团陪同。

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. What is a package tour?
2. Who is the innovator of package tour?
3. Compared with the independent trip, what are the advantages of package tour?

Text B Summer Holiday

(Peter Hughes looks at how our horizons have expanded and the world has shrunk since 1963.)

‘We’re all going on a summer holiday,’ sang a British pop star, Cliff Richard, way back in 1963, but he and his musicians never thought of going further than ex-Yugoslavia. Their adventure in the film *Summer Holiday* involved buying a London bus and driving through Europe.

The few package holidays available were to places such as the Costa Brava, Palma, Austria or Italy. Holidaymakers flew in a piston-engined aeroplane such as the Lockheed Constellation and paid about forty guineas for 15 days in Majorca.

At that time package holidays were rarely shorter than two weeks. That was because the government wouldn’t allow tour operators using charter flights to sell a holiday for less than the price of a return ticket on a scheduled airline to the same place. As a result, the number of people able to afford a holiday abroad was limited.

The expansion of popular travel has been explosive. Around 250,000 people took a package holiday in 1963; in 1992 the figure was 11 million. Increased prosperity, of course, has made this possible but the biggest influences have been politics and technology. Take Australia for example, in 1963 you would have spent your life savings getting there. Now you can go to Sydney on a two-week package and stay at a four-star hotel for a fraction of that price.

It was a mixture of politics and technology that brought the Great Barrier Reef and Sydney harbor within reach. For years the national airlines had opposed any competition from charters but, as the Australian economy declined and with the success of the bicentenary celebrations, revenue from tourism seemed more and more attractive. So the politicians changed their mind and charters started up in 1988.

The new technology was in the aircraft itself, the Boeing 767 two-engined jet with the range and economy to bring a whole catalogue of long-haul destinations into the package holiday field. Thailand, India, Mexico, East Africa, the States and the Caribbean all have their place in the mass market brochures thanks to the new aircraft.

Politics with an even bigger ‘P’ have opened up parts of the world that the most adventurous would have been reluctant to visit thirty years ago, even if they had been allowed in. Now several international airlines fly to Ho Chi Minh City, formerly Saigon, and the tourist can scramble through the Vietcong’s secret network of tunnels which have been specially widened for broad-bottomed westerners. China now welcomes tourists who throng the Forbidden City, cruise up the Yangtze, and marvel at the Terracotta Warriors at *Xi’an*.

As for Eastern Europe, the Russians want tourists almost more than there are tourists to go there, and in the Czech state visitors stroll through the fairy-tale streets of Prague in their millions.

In these cities a complete legacy of architecture has been handed down intact. St Petersburg would still be recognizable to Peter the Great; Prague is still much as Mozart knew it.

Words and Expressions

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| (1) holidaymaker ['hɒlədeɪ'meɪkə] | <i>n.</i> | 度假者 |
| (2) rarely ['reəli] | <i>adv.</i> | 很少; 不常 |
| (3) oppose [ə'pəʊz] | <i>v.</i> | 反对, 抵制 |
| (4) revenue ['revɪnju:] | <i>n.</i> | 各项收入; 国家税收 |
| (5) long-haul [lɒŋ-'haʊl] | <i>n.</i> | 远程运输 |
| (6) adventurous [əd'ventʃərəs] | <i>adj.</i> | 大胆的; 带有冒险性的 |
| (7) legacy ['legəsi] | <i>n.</i> | 遗产 |
| (8) a fraction of | | 少许, 一点儿; 片断 |
| (9) thanks to | | 幸亏, 由于 |
| (10) be reluctant to do sth. | | 不情愿做某事 |
| (11) marvel at | | 对……赞佩不已 |

Notes

1. ... our horizons have expanded and the world has shrunk 我们的视野扩展了而世界缩小了
2. guinea 基尼, 英国旧时货币, 已停止流通
3. a scheduled airline 定期航线
4. bicentenary celebrations 200 周年庆典活动

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. What was the film *Summer Holiday* about?
2. How much did two weeks in Majorca cost in 1963?
3. What were package holidays like at that time?
4. How has Australia become a tourist destination?
5. How has politics affected tourism?



Part IV Writing

Itinerary

Itinerary is mainly made up of two parts: 1. arrangement of activities which is made in chronological order. 2. the standard of service including transportation, accommodation, tour guide, fare and sometimes insurance instructions etc. Besides, other information is also given such as

quotation, precautions, and a brief introduction to the main tourist attractions.

Sample

Itinerary of a Four-day Tour in <i>Beijing</i>			
Day 01: Arrival at <i>Beijing</i> Pick up travelers at the <i>Beijing</i> Capital Airport by our driver, then transfer to traveler's hotel for checking in, free at leisure.			
Day 02: <i>Beijing</i> After breakfast, visit <i>Tianan'men</i> Square, the Forbidden City. After lunch, visit Temple of Heaven and the Summer Palace. Peking Duck Dinner and Peking Opera in the evening. Back to your hotel.			
Day 03: <i>Beijing</i> After breakfast, A full day excursion to the <i>Badaling</i> Great Wall and <i>Ming</i> Tombs. Lunch included. Back to your hotel.			
Day 04: <i>Beijing</i> and departure In the morning, arrange guests to visit <i>Beijing Hutong</i> and <i>Lama</i> Temple. Include lunch. Then free shopping in the afternoon. Back to your hotel and airport transfer service.			
Inclusions: 1. All transfers and city transportation for your own use 2. Entrance fees and meals as mentioned 3. Private car or van with English speaking guide 4. The above private escorted tour is customized for you, your family or your friends exclusively. No other travelers will join in your group 5. Hotels with daily breakfast			
Cost: in US\$ per person			
Traveling Party	Deluxe Class	Standard Class	Budget Class
1 person	\$660	\$510	\$420
2~5 persons	\$440	\$320	\$250
6~9 persons	\$380	\$260	\$200
Single room Supplement	\$220	\$120	\$70
Recommended Hotel	<u>Prime Hotel</u> or <u>International Hotel</u>	<u>Tiantan Hotel</u> or <u>Holiday Inn</u>	<u>Shatan Hotel</u> or <u>Communications Hotel</u>

Exercise



Write a four-day itinerary in *Hangzhou* which covers:

Day 1 The West Lake: Spring Down at *Su* Causeway, Autumn Moon on the Calm Lake, the Three Towers Reflecting the Moon, *Gu Shan* (Solitary Hill), *Bai* Causeway, the Lakeside Park, Oriole Singing in the Willows, etc.

Day 2 *Lingyin* Temple, *Feilai Feng*, Yellow Dragon Cave, *Yue Fei's* Tomb, etc.

Day 3 China Silk Museum, a tea plantation and a tea mill by motorcar. Go shopping,

Hangzhou silk, brocade, Dragon Well tea, Zhang Xiaoquan scissors, etc.

Day 4 Liu He (Six Harmony) Pagoda, Hu Pao (Tiger) Spring, the Dragon Well, etc.



Cultural Tips

Culture shapes people's view! When you communicate with people from another culture, a polite greeting may turn to be an impolite one, a sentence out of good will may turn to be an insult, and a talk with a good intention may turn to be hostility if you don't know their culture well. Read the following conversations.

(J— Jonathan; A— Ann)

J: Ann, your English is improving. I'm pleased with your work.

A: (Looking down) Oh, no. My English is not very good.

J: Why do you say that, Ann? You're doing very well in class.

A: No. I am not a good student.

J: Ann, you're making progress in this class. You should be proud of your English.

A: No. it's not true. You are a good teacher, but I am not a good student.

(Now, predict Jonathan's feeling.)

Another conversation:

J: Ann, your English is improving. I'm pleased with your work.

A: (*Making eye contact*) Thank you. I've learned a lot in this course.

J: You are doing well, and I really see progress.

A: I enjoy studying English. I do homework every night.

J: I can see that. Keep up the good work.

A: I'll try. You are a good teacher. You have helped me a lot.

Question

Guess what different culture they come from? What will be the teacher's response in the two dialogues?

Unit 2

Hotel Service

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to meet tourists at airport and check in
- read a welcome speech and an introduction of the Summer Palace
- write a conference centre promotion
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Call 1

1. Whom does the speaker want to call?
2. What's Mrs. Smith's phone number?

Call 2

3. How much is the flight supplement charge?
4. What is the total price?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

5. For whom does the speaker want to book a room?
6. How long will the couple stay in the hotel?
7. How will Mrs. Washington pay?
8. Why would Mrs. Washington like to have a bottle of champagne in the room when they come?

Task 3

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Before a group arrives at hotel, _____(1) should make a brief introduction of the hotel to the tourists. This introduction should include the hotel's name, its rating, location, _____(2), facilities

and functions etc., so that the tourists could be familiar with it during their stay.

Hotel services may include _____(3) service like restaurants, cafes, shops, bars, or room service, housekeeping including laundry service, and sports service like swimming pool, tennis court, and badminton court. Some common service like Front Desk, _____(4) and Telecommunication Center should also be introduced to tourists.

No matter what you will say, please do it on bus, with your microphone, for it's the best time for you to catch their attention when they are so _____(5) this strange land.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: Meeting the Guest at the Airport

(G— Tour Guide; L — Tour Leader)

G: Excuse me, but are you Mr. Peter Cookson from Sunshine Travel in Washington?

L: Yes, I am.

G: I'm *Gao Liang*, your local tour guide from CITS, *Beijing* Branch.

L: How do you do, Mr. Gao?

G: How do you do? Welcome to *Beijing*.

L: Thank you.

G: Mr. Cookson, is everyone in the group here?

L: All except Mr. Philip Craig and his wife. They were not able to fly to Tokyo to join our group today, but they are coming tomorrow.

G: I see. We'll have to meet them tomorrow.

L: Right. Is that going to cause any trouble in the visa arrangements?

G: Yes, I'm afraid so. You have a group visa, right? Now that two people have failed to show up today, their names will be removed from the name list for the group visa. When they come tomorrow, they will have to apply for separate visas.

L: That's a hell of a lot of trouble.

G: No, sir. Customs formalities in China have been streamlined in recent years to facilitate tourism flow. All they have to do is to fill out a visa application form, and it will be granted in no time.

L: That's great. Do I have to come to the airport to meet them and help make arrangements?

G: No, that isn't necessary. One of my colleagues will come.

L: Sorry to cause you so much trouble.

G: It's no trouble at all.

Notes

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1. visa ['vɪzə] n. | 签证 |
| 2. a group visa | 团体签证 |
| 3. customs ['kʌstəmz] n. | 海关 |
| 4. formality [fɔ:'mæliiti] n. | 形式上的手续 |
| 5. streamline ['stri:mlain] v. | 简化 |
| 6. Customs formalities in China have been streamlined in recent years 近年来中国海关的
通关手续已经简化了 | |
| 7. to fill out a visa application form | 填好签证申请表 |

Dialogue 2: Check in, please

(R—Receptionist; G—Guest)

R: Good morning. Can I help you sir?

G: Hi, I'd like to check in, please.

R: Could I have your name, please?

G: It's William Smith.

R: Ah yes, Mr. William Smith. Single room for three nights.

Would you like a smoking or non-smoking room?

G: Non-smoking, please.

R: Would you mind showing me your passport, please?

G: Yes, here it is.

R: Thank you. I need to put your details into the computer.

G: That's OK. I don't need my passport right now so I can leave it with you and get it later this evening.

R: That'll be fine. Would you like the porter to help you with your bags?

G: Oh, yes please. They're a bit heavy. Thanks.

R: Enjoy your stay here.

G: Thank you.

Notes

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----|
| 1. single room | 单人间 |
| 2. passport ['pɑ:spɔ:t] n. | 护照 |
| 3. porter ['pɔ:tə] n. | 服务生 |

Professional Practice

The following expressions are useful when meeting the guests at airport and checking in a hotel.

● Enquiry at airport

Excuse me, but are you Mr. X from AB Travel in the United States?

I'm Lily from CY Travel Service, welcome to China, Mr. X. How was your trip?

You have a group of 16, right?

Is everyone in the group here?

Are they all here with their luggage?

- Tips for checking in a hotel

Have you made a reservation?

Could I have your name, please?

Could I see your passport?

Thank you. Here are your passport. Please fill in these registration forms.

Exercise



Complete the dialogue with these phrases and then speak with your partner.

- Is everyone here?
- How many pieces of luggage do you have altogether?
- Is everybody's luggage ready?
- Is the schedule all right?
- Breakfast is to be served at 7:30.

(A tour group is going to check out in the hotel lobby.)

(G—Tour Guide; L—Tour Leader)

G: Good morning, ____ 1 ____

L: Yes.

G: ____ 2 ____

L: Yes, everything is all right.

G: Your luggage will be taken to the bus by the bellboy. Ten minutes later, please meet at the dining room. ____ 3 ____ . After your breakfast, please meet on the bus. We'll set off to the airport at 8:20. The departure time of the flights is 10:30 this morning. ____ 4 ____

L: Yes, thank you.

G: ____ 5 ____

L: 20 in all. Now can you go with me to the front desk to check out?

G: Sure.



Part III Reading

Text A Welcome Speech

Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen.

We are deeply honored to welcome all of you from around the world to *Shanghai*. Let me introduce my team first. Mr. *Zhang* is an experienced driver, so you're in very safe hands. Ms. *Li*, a recent college graduate, is a trainee tour guide. My name is *Liu Hong*, you may just call me *Liu*, which is my surname. We're from China International Travel Service, *Shanghai* Branch. The Chinese people have a long tradition of hospitality. We want our guests to feel at home, to sample the best we have to offer and to make the trip in China a pleasant memory.

For you, our honorable guests, *Shanghai* has in store an impressive array of events for your mind and senses, for leisure and pleasure.

Shanghai is the engine of China. I am sure you would not miss the opportunity to gain insight into the vigor and prosperity in this promising land. In the next few days we have arranged an itinerary which covers the main scenic spots in *Shanghai*. For those of you interested in discovering Chinese culture and heritage, we have organized a special program on Tai Chi, Chinese tea preparation and *Shaolin* Kung Fu for you.

You're going to stay at the Shangri-la Hotel, a luxurious, five-star hotel. The hotel is located within easy access to many tourist attractions. As you'll be staying in our city for a few days, you'd better remember the number of our bus. The number is 84176. Let me repeat: 84176.

The flight from San Francisco to Shanghai has taken you from the Western Hemisphere to the Eastern Hemisphere. The time difference between the two cities is 16 hours. Please reset your watches to *Beijing* standard time, which is 3:15 p.m. Although China spans five time zones, the entire country follows *Beijing* standard time.

Ladies and gentlemen, as the host city for 2010 World Expo, *Shanghai* is at your service. I wish you a fruitful stay.

Thank you very much.

Words and Expressions

(1) hospitality [ˌhɒspi'tæliiti] <i>n.</i>	热情
(2) honour ['ɒnə] <i>n.&v.</i>	(给予) 荣誉
(3) honourable ['ɒnərəbl] <i>adj.</i>	荣誉的
(4) vigor ['vɪɡə] <i>n.</i>	活力, 生命力
(5) promising ['prɒmisiŋ] <i>adj.</i>	有希望的
(6) heritage ['heritɪdʒ] <i>n.</i>	遗产
(7) luxurious [lʌg'zjuəriəs] <i>adj.</i>	豪华的
(8) fruitful ['fru:tful] <i>adj.</i>	富有成果的
(9) in store for sb./sth.	备有……
(10) array of events	一系列事件

Notes

1. trainee tour guide	实习导游
2. within access to	容易去到某地
3. from the Western Hemisphere to the Eastern Hemisphere	

4. the time difference

从西半球到东半球

时差

5. China spans five time zones

中国有五个时区

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on Text A.

1. What aspects does a Welcome Speech generally include?

2. Can you make a short Welcome Speech with your own specific information according to

Text A?

Text B The Palace Museum



What strikes one first in a bird's-eye view of *Beijing* is a vast tract of golden roofs flashing brilliantly in the sun with purple walls occasionally emerging amid them and a stretch of luxuriant tree leaves flanking on each side. That is the former Imperial Palace, popularly known as the Forbidden City, from which twenty-four emperors of the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties ruled China for some 500 years—from 1420 to 1911. The *Ming* Emperor *Yong Le*, who usurped the throne from his nephew and made *Beijing* the capital, ordered its construction, on which approximately 10,000 artisans and a million workmen toiled for fourteen years from 1406 to 1420. At present, the Palace is an elaborate museum that presents the largest and most complete ensemble of traditional architecture complex and more than 900,000 pieces of court treasures in all dynasties in China.

Located in the center of *Beijing*, the entire palace area, rectangular in shape and 72 hectares in size, is surrounded by walls ten meters high and a moat 52 meters wide.

The main buildings, the six great halls, one following the other, are set facing south along the central north-south axis from the Meridian Gate, the south entrance, to *Shenwumen*, the great gate piercing in the north wall. On either side of the palace are many comparatively small buildings. Symmetrically in the northeastern section lie the six Eastern Palaces and in the northwestern section the six Western Palaces. The Palace area is divided into two parts: the Outer Court and the Inner Palace. The former consists of the first three main halls, where the emperor received his courtiers and conducted grand ceremonies, while the latter was the living quarters for the imperial residence. At the rear of the Inner Palace is the Imperial Garden where the emperor and his family sought recreation.

The main entrance to the Palace is the Meridian Gate, which was so named because the emperor considered himself the 'Son of the Heaven' and the Palace the center of the universe, hence the north-south axis as the Meridian line going right through the Palace. The gate is crowned with five towers, commonly known as the Five-Phoenix Towers, which were installed with drums

and bells. Where the emperor went to the Temple of Heaven, bells were struck to mark this important occasion. When he went to the Ancestral Temple, it was the drums that were beaten to publicize the event.

Beyond the Meridian Gate unfolds a vast courtyard across which the Inner Golden Water River runs from west to east. The river is spanned by five bridges, which were supposed to be symbols of the five virtues preached by Confucius: benevolence, righteousness, rites, intelligence, and fidelity.

At the north end of the courtyard is a three-tiered white marble terrace, seven meters above the ground, on which, one after another, stand three majestic halls: the Hall of Supreme Harmony, the Hall of Central Harmony, and the Hall of Preserving Harmony.

The Hall of Supreme Harmony, rectangular in shape, 27 meters in height, 2,300 square meters in area, is the grandest and most important hall in the Palace complex. It is also China's largest existing palace of wood structure and an outstanding example of brilliant color combinations. This hall used to be the throne hall for ceremonies which marked great occasions: the Winter Solstice, the Spring Festival, the emperor's birthday and enthronement, and the dispatch of generals to battles, etc. On such occasions, there would be an imperial guard of honor standing in front of the Hall that extended all the way to the Meridian Gate.

On the north face of the hall in the center of four golden dragon coiled columns is the 'Golden Throne', which was carved out of sandalwood. The throne rests on a two-meter-high platform with a screen behind it. In front of it, to the left and right, stand ornamental cranes, incense burners and other ornaments. The dragon columns entwined with golden dragons measure one meter in diameter. The throne itself, the platform and the screen are all carved with dragon designs. High above the throne is a color-painted coffered ceiling which changes in shape from square to octagonal to circular as it ascends layer upon layer. The utmost central vault is carved with the gilded design of a dragon toying with pearls. When the emperor mounted the throne, gold bells and jade chimes sounded from the gallery, and clouds of incense rose from the bronze cranes and tortoises and tripods outside the hall on the terrace. The aura of majesty created by the imposing architecture and solemn ritual were designed to keep the subjects of the 'Son of the Heaven' in awe and reverence.

The Hall of Central Harmony is smaller and square with windows on all sides. Here the emperor rehearsed for ceremonies. It is followed by the Hall of Preserving Harmony in which banquets and imperial examinations were held.

Behind the Hall of Preserving Harmony lies a huge marble ramp with inter-winding clouds and dragons carved in relief. The slab, about 6.5 meters long, 3 meters wide and 250 tons in weight, is placed between two flights of marble steps along which the emperor's sedan was carried up or down the terrace. It is the largest piece of stone carving in the Imperial Palace. Quarried in the mountains scores of kilometers southwest of *Beijing*, this gigantic stone was moved to the city by sliding it over a specially paved ice road in winter. To provide enough water to build the ice road, wells were sunk at every 500 meters along the way.

The three halls of the Inner Palace are replicas of the three halls in the front, but smaller in

size. They are the Palace of Heavenly Purity, the Hall of Union, and the Palace of Earthly Tranquility.

The Palace of Heavenly Purity was once the residence of the *Ming* emperors and the first two of the *Qing* emperors. Then the *Qing* Emperor *Yong Zheng* moved his residence to the Hall of Mental Cultivation and turned it into an audience hall to receive foreign envoys and handled the state affairs. The promotion and demotion of officials were also decided in this hall. After the emperor's death his coffin was placed here for a 49-day period of mourning.

The Palace of Union was the empress's throne room and the Hall of Earthly Tranquility, once a private living-room for the empress, was partitioned. The west chamber served religious purposes and the east one was the bridal chamber where the newly married emperor and empress spent their first two nights after their wedding.

The Imperial Garden was laid out during the early *Ming* Dynasty. Hundreds of pines and cypresses offer shade while various flowers give colors to the garden all year round and fill the air with their fragrance. In the center of the garden is the Hall of Imperial Peace, a Taoist temple, with a flat roof slightly sloping down to the four eaves. This type of roof was rare in ancient Chinese architecture. In the northeastern corner of the garden is a rock hill, known as the Hill of the Piled-up Wonders, which is topped with a pavilion. At the roof of the hill are two fountains which jet two columns of water high into the air. It is said that on the ninth night of the ninth month of the lunar calendar, the empress would mound the hill to enjoy the autumn scene. It is also believed that climbing to a high place on that day would keep people safe from contagious diseases.

The Six Western Palaces were residences for empresses and concubines. They are kept in their original way for show. The Six Eastern Palaces were the residences for them too. But now they serve as special museums: the Museum of Bronze, the Museum of Porcelain and the Museum of Arts and Crafts of the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties. In the northeastern-most section of the Inner Palace are the Museum of Traditional Chinese Paintings and the Museum of Jewelry and Treasures where rare pieces of imperial collections are on display.

Now the Forbidden City is no longer forbidding, but inviting. A visit to the Palace Museum will enrich the visitors' knowledge of history, economy, politics, arts as well as architecture in ancient China.

Words and Expressions

(1) meridian [mə'ridiən] <i>adj.</i>	子午线的
(2) Meridian Gate	午门
(3) axis [æks] <i>n.</i>	轴
(4) phoenix ['fi:niks] <i>n.</i>	凤凰
(5) ancestral ['ænsəstrəl] <i>adj.</i>	祖先的
(6) supreme [sju'pri:m] <i>adj.</i>	最高的
(7) harmony ['hɑ:məni] <i>n.</i>	和谐
(8) preserve [pri'zə:v] <i>v.</i>	保护, 保持
(9) solstice ['sɒlstis] <i>n.</i>	至点

(10) the Winter Solstice	冬至
(11) enthronement [in'trəʊnmənt] n.	登基
(12) guard of honor	仪仗队
(13) octagonal [ɒk'tæɡənəl] n.	八边形
(14) bronze [brɒnz] n.	铜
(15) crane [kreɪn] n.	鹤
(16) tortoise ['tɔ:təs] n.	龟
(17) tripod ['traɪpɒd] n.	三脚台
(18) Son of the Heaven	天子
(19) ramp [ræmp] n.	坡道
(20) replica ['replɪkə] n.	仿造品

Notes

1. The *Ming* Emperor *Yong Le* 明朝皇帝永乐。朱元璋建立明朝，定都南京，将四子朱棣封为燕王驻守北平。朱元璋死后由长孙朱允炆继位，后来朱棣起兵攻下南京，夺取帝位，建元永乐，改北平为北京。

2. the Temple of Heaven	天坛
3. the Ancestral Temple	太庙
4. The Inner Golden Water River	内金水河
5. the five virtues ... and fidelity	孔子教诲的五行，即仁、义、礼、智、信
6. central north-south axis	南北中轴线
7. the Outer Court	外朝
8. the Inner Palace	内廷
9. the Five-Phoenix Towers	五凤楼
10. the Hall of Supreme Harmony	太和殿
11. the Hall of Central Harmony	中和殿
12. the Hall of Preserving Harmony	保和殿
13. color-painted coffered ceiling	彩色藻井
14. the Palace of Heavenly Purity	乾清宫
15. the Hall of Union	交泰殿
16. the Hall of Earthly Tranquility	坤宁宫
17. the Hall of Mental Cultivation	养心殿
18. the Hill of Piled-up Wonders	堆秀山
19. the Six Western Palaces	西六宫
20. the Six Eastern Palaces	东六宫

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

- How long does the Forbidden City exist?
- What is it in size and shape?

3. Where did the emperor receive his courtiers and conducted grand ceremonies?
4. What palaces are mentioned in the text? And what were they used for?



Part IV Writing

Conference Centre Promotion

Working at a Conference Centre, you may often receive enquiries about the conference facilities you are able to provide. A formal reply covers the following details: location, facilities, price, reservation, etc. Try to find out the client's needs and do your best to win the contract.

Sample

In response to your recent enquiry I am writing to present the Park Conference Centre which is situated in *Beijing*, China approximately 5 km from the international airport.

The conference centre is set in superb countryside and its peaceful atmosphere makes it an ideal venue. We are able to accommodate up to 400 delegates at any one time and offer the highest standard of catering, facilities and entertainment.

The centre houses four main meeting rooms measuring 35m×25m and 18 business rooms all equipped with the latest facilities. In addition, we will hire, for a modest extra charge, a dedicated conference coordinator and an interpreter.

Our prices are reasonable and many extras such as OHPS and flip charts are provided free of charge.

In order to make a reservation, please complete the online enquiry form. Alternatively, you may telephone or fax us. Reservations are confirmed by the payment of a deposit, the amount of which depends on the nature of the accommodation.

If you require any further information about the facilities and professional services please do not hesitate to contact us.

We look forward to hearing from you soon.

Exercise



Suppose you are a representative in a conference centre. Write a reply to a client to recommend a venue and explain why it meets their requirements.



Cultural Tips

Common Dilemmas across Cultures

Billions of business dollars are lost each year because executives don't understand the customs and traditions of their guest country. As an international manager who has conducted more than 1,000 deals in 51 countries, I have observed numerous cultural differences and how they can impact on business and personal lives. While you cannot know the customs of every country you visit, you can be sensitive to basic cultural preferences and taboos.

One of the most common dilemmas of international etiquette is what to bring as a gift when you are invited to someone's home for dinner. In France, if your first thought is a bottle of wine — think again. You risk insulting your French host by insinuating his cellar is inadequate. Well then, how about a bouquet of flowers? That selection may show poor judgment as well. First, your host doesn't want to search for the right size vase in the midst of all his or her other duties. Second, you must remember to bring an uneven number (never the unlucky 13), avoid chrysanthemums (funeral only), red roses (which signify you are having an affair with your hostess), and yellow flowers (they imply your host is having an affair with someone else). My suggestion? Take a box of very best chocolates you can find.

Question

What's the suitable gift when you are invited to someone's home for dinner in France?

Unit 3

Chinese Cuisine

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to deal with a telephone enquiry
- read what a package tour is and its development
- write an itinerary and talk about the tour
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. In which field does food play an important role in China?
2. What is the range of China's geography?
3. What is the climate like in China?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. Emphasis on the freshness, flavor and texture of ingredients is key to fine Chinese cooking.
5. Quick cooking with a pot and deep-frying are universal to most styles of cooking in China.
6. Traders, missionaries and invading peoples had less effect on Chinese food ingredients.
7. With harsh winters and short growing conditions, northern and western regions tend to offer

hot cuisine.

8. In ancient times and even today, those living in the remote areas didn't travel extensively and there have been few outside influences from other cultures.

Task 3

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Western Dinner

The Western dinner is the most important ____ (1). At a formal dinner, people will start with an appetizer. A ____ (2) normally goes with the appetizer. Then comes the soup which goes with

sherry. After the soup, fish or ____ (3) is served together with chilled white wine. Then the main course, normally a meat item, ____ (4) by vegetable with salad and dressing, is served with champagne or red wine. Dessert, cheese and fruit will be served after the main ____ (5).



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: We Would Like Typical Chinese Cuisine

(G1—Guest 1; G2—Guest 2; W—Waiter)

G1: Good evening. We'd like a table for two, please.

W: Certainly, if you'd just like to follow me. Would you like to have an aperitif?

G1: No, thank you. We would like typical Chinese cuisine.

W: Right, here is the menu for you to look at.

(a moment later)

W: Are you ready to order?

G1: Yes, I'll have *Beijing* Roast Duck.

G2: And I'll have Spicy Diced Chicken with peanuts.

W: So that's one *Beijing* Roast Duck and one Spicy Diced Chicken with Peanuts. And what would you like to drink?

G1: I'm not sure. Any suggestions?

W: I'd certainly recommend *Maotai* since it's typical of Chinese wine.

G1: OK, we'll take your word for it.

Notes

- | | |
|------------------------------|------|
| 1. cuisine [kwi'zi:n] n. | 烹饪风格 |
| 2. menu ['menju:] n. | 菜谱 |
| 3. <i>Beijing</i> Roast Duck | 北京烤鸭 |

Dialogue 2: An Informal Chinese Meal

(C— Cornell; M— Manager)

C: It looks like I'm too early.

M: No, you're right on time. Sit where you like, please.

C: All right. I like being informal.

M: Here is the menu. Are you ready to order?

C: You know Chinese cooking better than I do. So it's better for you to order.

- M: Do you like hot spicy food?
- C: Yes, I would like to try any Chinese cuisine. After all, we are in China.
- M: Shall we have chicken cubes with hot pepper and peanuts, fresh mushrooms with vegetables, fried prawns and fish with sweet and sour sauce?
- C: Sounds good to me.
- M: Do you care for a roast duck? It's a specialty here.
- C: Chinese roast duck is well known all over the world.
- M: You bet. Better eat it hot. It usually goes with pancakes, soybean paste and sliced leek.
- C: Uh, sounds mouthwatering! I'm eager to try some.
- M: OK. Eh, would you like something to drink?
- C: What do you recommend?
- M: How about *Maotai*? It's typical Chinese wine.
- C: Good idea. I'll have a try.
- (at the end of the meal)
- C: As the saying goes, parting is such sweet sorrow. I must be off now.
- M: It's a pity that you have to leave so soon.
- C: Thank you for a wonderful meal. I hope to have a chance to repay your hospitality some day.
- M: Thanks for coming.

Notes

- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. mushroom ['mʌʃrʊm] <i>n.</i> | 蘑菇 |
| 2. specialty ['speʃəlti] <i>n.</i> | 特色菜 |
| 3. pancake ['pænkeɪk] <i>n.</i> | 饼 |
| 4. soybean ['soɪ'bi:n] <i>n.</i> | 大豆; 黄豆 |
| 5. leek [li:k] <i>n.</i> | 韭菜, 大葱 |
| 6. recommend [ˌrekə'mend] <i>v.</i> | 推荐 |
| 7. hot spicy food | 辛辣食品 |
| 8. You bet | (口语) 的确, 当然 |
| 9. It usually goes with (pancakes, soybean paste and sliced leek). | 它通常和(薄饼, 甜面酱, 葱丝儿)搭配在一起吃。 |

Professional Practice

The following expressions are useful when explaining dishes.

- name the dish

Beijing Roast Duck

- name the main ingredient and how it is prepared

...is fried chicken

...is made from

...is made with

- say how it is served

served with garlic

comes with a salad

- always sound enthusiastic when recommending dishes

It's served with a **delicious** soybean paste.

The chicken is our house **specialty**.

Exercise



Complete the dialogue with these phrases and then speak with your partner.

- I'm sorry. We're very busy this afternoon.
- I do apologize. Is everything all right, Sir?
- How can I help you?
- I'm afraid there's been a mistake. I'll ask the cashier to deduct one bottle.
- Let me see. It says two bottles of beer.

(C— customer; W— waiter)

C: Excuse me!

W: I'll be with you in a minute, Sir. 1

C: We've been waiting to check the bill for ten minutes.

W: 2

C: Well, this is terrible service.

W: 3

C: Well, actually, I think you overcharged us for the beer.

W: 4

C: But we only had one bottle.

W: I'm sorry. 5



Part III Reading

Text A Chinese Cuisine

China features a vast landscape, numerous ethnic groups, different climates and differentiated geographical environments. Even the *Han* people, the majority in China, have varied customs and dialects due to their different historical and cultural background, and locality. Naturally, the

different areas also developed different tastes in food: some prefer sour food while others have a sweet tooth. Different dishes with local features flourish, evolving into the so-called 'eight' cuisine styles.

Among the foods are scallions and rich materials, such as Stewed Scallion and Sea Cucumber. Then there's the spicy food, such as Shredded Pork with Chilli and Garlic Sauce, or Soup with a mild and sweet flavor, as in Steamed Shad. Other notables include fresh, tender and nourishing dishes like Roast piglet with crispy skin.



The Chinese prefer to combine gourmet food with festivals and occasions. The most interesting part of cuisine culture lies in the feasts offered on various occasions, including festivals, birthday parties, weddings and funerals. During Spring Festival (the lunar Chinese New Year), *Han* families usually eat *jiaozi* (dumplings) shaped like gold ingots, symbolizing good luck. Spring pancake, eight-jewel rice pudding (steamed glutinous rice with bean paste, lotus seeds, preserved fruits, etc.) and eight-jewel rice porridge are also served during this period. Theatrical performances and temple fairs are the places where you can find lion dances, acrobatics and various traditional foods. Other ethnic groups also have their distinct recreational activities and festive foods, such as the Baked cake of the *Man* people, the Fried pastry of the *Hui* people, the pyramid-shaped glutinous rice dumplings wrapped in bamboo leaves of the *Zhuang* people and the Mutton and rice eaten with fingers of the *Uygur* people.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| (1) ethnic ['eθnik] adj. | 民族的, 种族的 |
| (2) differentiate [ˌdɪfə'renʃieɪt] v. | 区别 |
| (3) flourish ['flaɪʃ] v. | 繁荣 |
| (4) evolve [ɪ'vɒlv] v. | 演变 |
| (5) scallion ['skæliən] n. | 大葱 |
| (6) cucumber ['kʃukʌmbə] n. | 黄瓜 |
| (7) sea cucumber n. | 海参 |
| (8) shred [ʃred] v. | 把……切成碎片 |
| (9) pork [pɔ:k] n. | 猪肉 |
| (10) shad [ʃæd] n. | 西鲱 |
| (11) chilli ['tʃɪli] n. | 辣椒 |
| (12) garlic ['gɑ:lik] n. | 大蒜 |
| (13) sauce [sɔ:s] n. | 调味汁, 酱 |
| (14) piglet ['pɪglɪt] n. | 乳猪 |
| (15) crispy ['krispi] adj. | 脆的 |
| (16) gourmet ['guəmeɪ] n. | 美食家 |
| (17) ingot ['ɪŋgət] n. | 铸块, 锭 |
| (18) glutinous ['glu:tɪnəs] adj. | 黏稠的 |
| (19) lotus ['ləʊtəs] n. | 莲花 |

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------|------|
| (20) theatrical | [θi'ætri:kəl] | adj. | 剧院的 |
| (21) acrobatics | [æk'rəʊ'bætiks] | n. | 杂技 |
| (22) pastry | ['peɪstri] | n. | 酥皮糕点 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. Why do Chinese people have quite different tastes?
2. Can you give some examples to combine Chinese dishes with festivals and occasions?

Text B Eight Chinese Cuisine

The Chinese national passion for good cuisine makes eating out one of the greatest pleasures of a visit to China. There is a vast range of restaurants, from street stalls serving noodles to revolving restaurants atop hotels and converted courtyards where the imperial family once dined.

China's vast territory and long history have given birth to distinct regional cuisines over the centuries. The precise number of regional cuisines in China is still under dispute, but experts agree on at least eight: *Sichuan*, *Shandong*, *Guangdong* (Cantonese), *Jiangsu*, *Zhejiang*, *Fujian*, *Hunan* and *Anhui*, the eight provinces in China.

Sichuan Cuisine

In *Sichuan* province, people developed a distinctive spicy cuisine over a thousand years ago, making use of local peppers and garlic. The recipes were gradually refined as different meat and vegetables — as well as imported Mexican chilies — were added, so that today there is an impressive range of *Sichuan* dishes.

These include spicy shrimps on a hot platter, eggplant in pepper and garlic, bean curd in chili sauce and cabbage marinated in hot spices. There are also non-spicy dishes like smoked duck, and steamed bread, while the favorite staple is *dan dan mian*, noodles in spicy garlic sauce.

Shan Dong Cuisine

The cuisine of *Beijing* and neighboring *Shandong* Province is based on wheat, cabbage and seafood, but the most famous dish from the north is *Beijing* Roast Duck, glazed and roasted in an oven, then served in fine slices of meat and crispy skin, with scallions and plum sauce in thin pancakes. Moslem food, like hot pots and kebabs, is also popular in the capital, while *Shandong* menus abound with shark's fin, scallops, sea cucumbers, prawns, oysters and conches.

Steamed dumplings and noodles are the staples, although rice is gaining adherents among the flour eaters, too.

Guangdong Cuisine

Chinatowns around the world have given foreigners a sample of the genius of Cantonese cooks, who have over the years emigrated from *Guangdong* Province to various parts of the world.

The average Cantonese menu has 100 dishes or more. They include all manner of meat,

seafood, vegetables, fungi, fruit and roots. They are often stir-fried to seal in flavor, otherwise baked, steamed or cooked in a casserole.

Just as important as the way they taste is the way they look: cold cuts shaped like phoenixes; vegetables in the form of a fan; dim sum that is a work of art ; and even the staple rice prepared to please the eye as well as the palate.

Jiangsu Cuisine

The cuisine of *Jiangsu* is sophisticated and cosmopolitan, with dishes selected from the fertile fields and rivers of the lower Yangtze basin. The local people are very particular about the making of their dishes and the way they are served. Here you can choose from *Hangzhou's* Beggar's Chicken, *Suzhou's* Mandarin fish, *Wuxi's* spareribs, deep fried white bait, 'Lion's Head' meatballs, and in winter, *Shanghai* crabs.

The dishes are usually baked, steamed or stir-fried, with rich sauces or fragrant herbs like coriander. For staples, *Shanghai* offers a choice of rice, noodles and dumplings.

Zhejiang Cuisine

Developed from the local food of the four cities in *Zhejiang* Province: *Hangzhou*, *Ningbo*, *Shaoxing*, *Wenzhou*, *Zhejiang* Cuisine makes crisp, tender, light and fresh dishes. The region is beautiful with many rivers and lakes so that shrimps and fish are largely produced. The products fresh from the water are made into mouth-watering dishes: Shrimp-meat with Dragon-well Tea, West Lake Sour Fish, Steamed Carp, Fried Shrimp Balls. Other famous dishes are *Dongpo* Braised Pork, Beggar's Chicken. The ways of the cutting and the temperature of cooking are closely observed, which is the key to the success of *Zhejiang* Cuisine.

Fujian Cuisine

Fujian Cuisine is developed from the local food of the three cities of *Fujian* Province: *Fuzhou*, *Quanzhou* and *Xiamen*. This region is very close to the sea and seafood making is, of course, the chef's culinary art. They are good at steaming, frying, braising the food, particularly good at pickling the ingredients before cooking. The popular dishes are Wined Chicken, Wined Sliced Fish, Deep-fried Prawns, Wined Sea Cucumber with Brown Sauce, Braised Abalone with Oyster Sauce. Flavor, color and appearance are important in *Fujian* Cuisine.

Hunan Cuisine

Hunan Cuisine is developed from the local food of the *Xiangjiang* Valley, *Dongting* Lake Area, and western mountainous *Hunan* Province. Its characteristics are a great variety of ingredients, shiny and strong colors, hot and spicy tastes, smoked and pickled flavors. Cooking techniques are pickling, smoking, spicing, simmering, steaming, braising and frying. The noted dishes are Hot and Spicy Chicken, Simmered Shark's Fin in Brown Sauce, Gold-Coin Fish, Sweet Lotus Seeds Soup.

Anhui Cuisine

Anhui Cuisine is developed from the local food at the Yangtze banks in *Anhui* Province, the *Huai* River Valley, and *Huizhou* region. Its characteristics are natural ingredients selected; temperature and timing of cooking closely observed; original color and flavor preserved. Deep-frying, roasting, simmering and steaming are the usual cooking techniques applied. The noted dishes are *Fuli* Stewed Chicken, Salted Mandarin Fish, Milky Fish King, Ham Simmered with Bamboo Shoots and Ham Simmered with Soft-shelled Turtles.

Words and Expressions

(1) noodle ['nu:dl] <i>n.</i>	面条
(2) convert [kən've:t] <i>v.</i>	变换
(3) dispute [di'spju:t] <i>n.</i>	分歧, 争议
(4) shrimp [ʃrimp] <i>n.</i>	虾
(5) slice [slais] <i>n.</i>	薄片, 切片
(6) plum [plʌm] <i>n.</i>	李子
(7) prawn [prɔ:n] <i>n.</i>	对虾
(8) oyster ['ɔistə] <i>n.</i>	牡蛎
(9) conch [kɒntʃ] <i>n.</i>	螺贝
(10) emigrate ['emigreit] <i>v.</i>	迁移
(11) fungi ['fʌŋgai] <i>n.</i> [fungus 的复数]	菌类
(12) casserole ['kæsə,rəul] <i>n.</i>	瓦瓷锅, 焙盘
(13) sparerib ['spɛə,rib] <i>n.</i>	排骨肉
(14) mandarin fish ['mændərin] <i>n.</i>	鳊鱼
(15) coriander [ˌkɔri'ændə] <i>n.</i>	芫荽
(16) carp [kɑ:p] <i>n.</i>	鲤鱼
(17) cosmopolitan [ˌkɔzmə'pɒlitən] <i>adj.</i>	大都市的
(18) culinary ['kʌlinəri] <i>adj.</i>	厨房的, 烹饪的
(19) braise [breiz] <i>v.</i>	炖煮
(20) pickle ['pɪkl] <i>v.</i>	腌制
(21) abalone [ˌæbə'ləuni] <i>n.</i>	鲍鱼
(22) ingredient [in'ɡri:diənt] <i>n.</i>	原料, 要素
(23) simmer ['simə] <i>v.</i>	慢煮

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. Can you list and describe Eight Chinese Cuisine?
2. Which of the dishes mentioned above would or wouldn't you like to try and why?



Part IV Writing

Chinese Cuisine

A tremendous range of food is available in China, from the rich meat dishes to the light, flaky pastries for which China is famous. A qualified tour practitioner should learn to introduce the traditional Chinese dishes.

Sample

Beijing Roast Duck

One of northern China's famous specialties is *Beijing* Roast Duck. It is prepared from a 3~4-month-old white *Beijing* duck; after cleaning, the duck is plugged and half filled with water; it is then placed in the oven so that while the water steams the inside of the duck, the outside is roasted over a fire made from wood of the jujube, pear, or apricot tree. The duck is cooked for about three quarters of an hour and is basted with its own fat.

The whole duck is usually brought to the table by the chef and then taken away to be cut into thin slices which are eaten wrapped in thin crepes or in rolls covered with sesame seed. The slices of duck are usually dipped into a thin brown sauce, chopped leeks, cucumber, and scallion.

Exercise



Describe a traditional dish served in China. Write a list of ingredients and say how it is served.



Cultural Tips

(Mariana L., Slovakia, on her first visit to the U.S.)

I spend three months in the USA. For two weeks, I was recovering from cultural shock as it was my first time in an English speaking country and it was really hard for me to say something in English.

An incident happened to me after a few weeks. We went out for a party. The house where the party took place was in a side street. After some time we discovered (two other Czechs and me) that there was a student standing in front of the house who was acting as a guard. They told us that he was watching people not to go on the street with a glass of beer or wine in their hand. As soon as someone tried to leave the house and walk in the street with a drink, he immediately ran after them and explained that it is forbidden to drink any alcohol on the street.

Later on, we found out that there are many other strange prohibitions in the U.S., such as prohibitions to drink a beer in a park or a picnic area, and many more...

Notes

In Europe, there is no moral stigma attached to drinking alcoholic beverages in public as there is in the U.S.

Europeans do not normally drink in order to get drunk (as some American students might), and do not at all appreciate drunk people. On the contrary, they will admire someone who can drink without getting drunk, and they drink in order to socialize and/or for the taste of it.

Question

How do you feel about drinking beer, wine and liquor? If you drink, do you do so in order to get drunk or for the taste of it?

Unit 4

City Tour

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to talk about *Xi'an* and *Sanya*
- read about attractions in *Shanghai* and the Great Wall
- write a report about promoting a destination
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

1. *Beijing* has a rich history that's mirrored in its spectacular palaces, temples and parks.
2. *Beijing* is a city of contrasts, vast neon-lit avenues coexist with narrow *hutongs*.
3. The city has a population of about 13 million.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

4. What is the origin of Hong Kong?
5. What's the feature of Hong Kong's culture?
6. What language is widely used in Hong Kong?

Task 3

Listen to the passage twice and fill in the blanks with the information about features of the tourist attractions.

Tourist Attraction	Description of its Features
Elephant Trunk Hill	
<i>Fubo</i> Mountain	
Reed Flute Hill	



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: *Xi'an*

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Now we are on top of the *Xi'an* City Wall. Here we can have a full view of the city and its ancient buildings.

T1: I can see the *Dayan* Pagoda we visited yesterday.

T2: I really admire the persistence and perseverance of Monk *Xuan Zang* in having that pagoda built.

G: Yes, he was great. If you look this way into the city, you can see the Bell Tower and the Drum Tower.

T1: I still can't figure out why they were built.

G: Well, in ancient times there were no clocks to tell the time, so people built the towers to strike bells or drums to give the time.

T1: What's the difference between striking bells and beating drums?

G: The bells were struck in the morning and the drums were beaten at dusk.

T1: So people arranged their activities by the sound of bells and drums, right?

G: That's right. This well-preserved city wall still speaks of the past glory and prosperity of ancient *Xi'an*. As you know, *Xi'an* was the noted capital of China for 13 dynasties that lasted for more than 1,100 years. It certainly abounds in historical relics. Just think of the imperial tombs around *Xi'an*. There are 27 tombs on the northern bank of the *Wei* River alone!

T2: Have they been excavated?

G: Most of them have not. But the ones that have been excavated have yielded great wonders. One of them is the Tomb of the First Emperor of the *Qin* Dynasty. It has yielded the terra-cotta troops. We shall visit it tomorrow.

Notes

- | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|-------|
| 1. <i>Dayan</i> Pagoda | [pə'gəudə] | 大雁塔 |
| 2. relics | ['reliks] n. | 遗迹 |
| 3. excavate | ['ekskə'veit] v. | 挖掘 |
| 4. terra-cotta troops | ['terə'kɒtə] | 兵马俑 |
| 5. terra-cotta/terracotta | | 赤土陶器的 |

Dialogue 2: *Sanya*

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

T: It is reported that many people go to *Sanya* for their vacation.

G: Yes, *Sanya* is at the southern tip of *Hainan* Island. It's a famous coast resort.

T: What's it famous for?

G: It is famous for relaxing, for sun and sand, for water sports, hiking and golf.

T: Sounds a terrific place.

G: Also you can visit a Moslem fishing village, a pearl farm and the 'Ends of the Earth'.

T: What is the 'Ends of the Earth'?

G: They are a few huge rocks located at the beach inscribed 'Ends of the Earth'.

T: Very interesting, I'd like to visit *Sanya*.

Notes

1. Moslem = Muslim ['mɒzləm] adj.& n. 回教徒 (的), 穆斯林教徒 (的)
2. inscribe [ins'kraɪb] v. 将 (文字) 刻于

Professional Practice

When giving a guided tour always remember PIE:

- Politeness, especially when answering questions
- Give clear and accurate information
- Show your enthusiasm

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(G—a tour guide; T—tourists)

G: 1 (请您等一会儿好吗)? I'll buy the tickets.

T: All right.

G: Here are your tickets. Please 2 (保管好).

T: Thank you.

G: Attention, please. Now it's 1:30 p.m., the time of sightseeing is 4 hours. 3 (我们 6:00 在门口集合) Is that OK?

T: Yes, that's OK.

G: Then, let's go in.

T: Why is it called the Window of the World?

G: ____ 4 ____ (总体来说, 它是世界历史之窗、世界文明之窗、世界旅游之窗)。

T: How wonderful!

G: This is the World Square. ____ 5 ____ (这里是亚洲区, 那边是美洲区)。

T: That's great!

G: ____ 6 ____ (今天玩得愉快吗)?

T: Yes, a great day I have!



Part III Reading

Text A *ShangHai*

You must have heard and read a great deal about the rapid development and modernization of *Shanghai*. Many proclaim that *Shanghai* has become a metropolis that rivals Hong Kong and Singapore as the Eastern world's answer to New York. It is indeed a window through which overseas tourists witness the modernization of China. Changes in *Shanghai* are amazing.



As the focus of the 'New China', *Shanghai* has made it known to the world for its prosperity, transport facilities, the convergence of Chinese and West cultures, diversified stage performances from various parts of China and the world, concentration of the food with different local tastes. The rocket-like Oriental Pearl TV Tower, the Bund, the *Nanjing* Road, the Jade Buddha Temple, the famous Peace Hotel, the People's Square and *Yu Garden* are all modern or historical landmarks in the city. Bring your camera to record the unceasing legend occurring on this amazing land.

Shanghai Attractions

● Night view of the Bund

Visit the Bund, which is symbolic of *Shanghai*. To the Europeans, it was *Shanghai's* Wall Street, a place of feverish trading, of fortunes made and lost.

● *Yu Garden*

Famous classical botanical garden. Built in 1559~1577, this is one of the most well known gardens in South China. Though small with an area of just 20,000 square meters, *Yu Garden* offers over 30 picturesque and fascinating vistas.

● Oriental Pearl TV Tower

It possesses 120,000 precious works of art. Mounting on the Oriental Pearl TV Tower to have a panoramic view of the city, you will be filled with admiration of this cosmopolis.

● The Jade Buddha Temple

A famous temple with more than one hundred years of history in *Shanghai*, its architectural

layout is precise, harmonious, and looks very magnificent.

Words and Expressions

(1) proclaim [prə'kleim] v.	公布, 宣告
(2) metropolis [mi'trɒpəlɪs] n.	主要都市
(3) rival ['raɪvəl] v.	和……竞争
(4) Singapore ['sɪŋgəpɔ:] n.	新加坡
(5) convergence [kən'və:dʒəns] n.	集聚, 集中
(6) diversify [daɪ'və:sɪfaɪ] v.	使多样化
(7) concentration [ˌkɒnsən'treɪʃən] n.	集中
(8) oriental [ɔ:'ri:əntl] adj.	东方的
(9) bund [bʌnd] n.	外滩, 码头
(10) botanical [bə'tænɪkəl] adj.	植物的
(11) cosmopolis [kɒz'mɒpəlɪs] n.	国际都市
(12) jade [dʒeɪd] n.	玉
(13) Buddha ['bu:də] n.	佛陀

Reading Comprehension

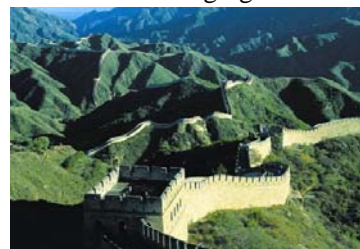
Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. What are the attractions mentioned in the text?
2. What's the size of the Yu Garden?
3. How many precious works of art are stored in the Oriental Pearl TV Tower?
4. How long is the history of the Jade Buddha Temple?

Text B The Great Wall

The Great Wall, like the Pyramids of Egypt, the Taj Mahal in India and the Hanging Garden of Babylon, is one of the great wonders of the world.

As the most magnificent man-made project on earth, the Great Wall of China was built 2,500 years ago and stretches more than 6,000 km. It is one of the most spectacular architectures and fortifications of ancient China. It was also one of two structures that astronauts could see from the moon. As an ancient Chinese saying goes: 'You cannot be called a hero if you have never been to the Great Wall'. You can only truly experience the vastness of China and the essence of the Chinese spirit when you stand on the Great Wall.



Construction of the Great Wall started in 7 B.C. The vassal states that under the Zhou Dynasty in the northern parts of the country, each built their own walls for defence purposes. After the state of Qin unified China in 221 B.C., it joined the walls to hold off the invaders from the Xiongnu tribes in the north and extended the wall by another 5,000 kilometres.

The Great Wall was renovated from time to time after the Qin Dynasty. A major renovation

started with the founding of the *Ming* Dynasty in 1368, and took 200 years to complete. The wall we see today is almost exactly the result of this effort. With a total length of over 6,000 kilometres, it extends to the *Jiayu* Pass in *Gansu* Province in the west and to the mouth of the *Yalu* River in *Liaoning* Province in the east.

Words and Expressions

(1) Pyramid	[ˈpiərəmɪd]	n.	金字塔
(2) Taj Mahal	[ˈtɑːdʒ məˈhɑːl]	n.	泰姬陵
(3) Babylon	[ˈbæbɪlən]	n.	巴比伦
(4) stretch	[stretʃ]	v.	伸开, 铺展, 扩展
(5) fortification	[ˌfɔːtɪfɪˈkeɪʃən]	n.	要塞
(6) vassal	[ˈvæsəl]	n.	封臣, 家臣
(7) renovate	[ˈrenəˌveɪt]	v.	修缮, 使复原
(8) renovation	[ˌrenəʊˈveɪʃən]	n.	翻新, 刷新

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. How many great wonders of the world mentioned in the text?
2. When did the Chinese people build high defensive walls on a large scale? Why?
3. What is the old Chinese saying related to the Great Wall?



Part IV Writing

Promoting a Destination

The brochure is probably one of the most important documents used in the promotion of a destination. Brochures use very descriptive language to make holiday destinations sound attractive. Read this description of *Dalian* in China and focus on the eye-catching words.

Sample

Think of *Dalian's* seacoast and what comes to your mind? Welcoming sandy beaches and warm summer sun? Or do you picture ocean cruises, deep-sea fishing, family attractions, and an abundance of tax-free shopping? Perhaps it's charming antique shops, fascinating museums and historic homes? Picture all these things, and you've only begun to picture what the seacoast city offers.

Dalian has all the ingredients for a perfect seaside holiday. Its major attraction is a long, wide beach of soft, gently-shelving sands, backed by a fine, tree-lined promenade. West of the beach you will find uncrowded streets alongside a picturesque coastline with pretty wooded areas and several

smaller bays.

East of *Dalian* is the attractive fishing village. With its marvelous beach, idyllic harbour and many magnificent seafood restaurants it is a resort in its own right. But wherever you stay in *Dalian* you'll have access to a whole host of pleasures: superb bathing, every kind of watersport and, by night, plenty of excitement in countless bars and discos. Another impressive attraction is the truly amazing Aquapark at Tiger Beach, a short bus ride from *Dalian* itself.

Exercise



You work as a research assistant for your local tourist board, which is looking at different ways of promoting a destination to different international markets. Write a short report describing a destination in China.



Cultural Tips

(Anna S., Spanish, with a Chinese friend)

Kei, a friend I met in England, announced that she was coming over to Spain for a visit, and I also wanted to introduce her to my parents. I liked the idea of her visit but I was worried about the behavior she might exhibit in front of my —fairly conservative— parents.

After her arrival she had her first meal with me alone, and again she did not mind burping (打嗝) or farting (放屁) in front of me, and even if she used to say 'excuse me' I found it terribly rude.

Thinking of a polite way to express my dissatisfaction without hurting her, I started shaking my legs like one does when one is nervous or upset. Kei said: 'Anna, don't shake your legs like that, don't you know this is really impolite?'

Notes

What is polite or impolite is not universally the same in every culture.

Question

Do you tolerate kei's behavior or would you try to change it?

Unit 5

Ancient Chinese Architecture

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to talk about the scenic spots in West Lake
- read about Chinese ancient architecture and terra-cotta legions
- write a letter of apology
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

The Temple of Heaven served *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasty emperors as a vast sacred_____ (1) to perform ceremonial rites (典礼, 仪式). Prior to the winter solstice (冬至), the emperor would lead a solemn procession, which commoners were_____ (2) to witness, from the Forbidden City to the Temple of Heaven. At first light on the winter solstice, after a night of fasting and ritual cleansing, the emperor would offer ritual sacrifices and make a report to_____ (3). He would also visit the Temple of Heaven on the 15th day of the first lunar month to_____ (4) a good harvest. The temple was vitally important to the imperial universe as it was considered the link between the emperor and Heaven.

The Temple of Heaven includes a large_____ (5) that's worth visiting on its own. It incorporates several religious structures, the highlight of which is the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest. The layout of the compound reflects its_____ (6) and so adheres to geometric patterns. For instance, the northern end of the park is curved while the southern end is_____ (7), reflecting the traditional Chinese_____ (8) of heaven as round and the earth as square. Likewise, the park gates are located at the four cardinal points (主要方位: 东、西、南、北).

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. Who had the biggest impact on the palace's appearance in history?

2. What happened to the Summer Palace during the Second Opium War?
3. Who gave the palace its current name?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. *Hutongs* and quadrangles have been the typical features of *Beijing's* urban landscape since the *Qing* Dynasty.
5. The *hutongs* are like villages within the metropolis.
6. Many *hutongs* have disappeared in the past decade to make way for modern apartment buildings and wider roads.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: *Hangzhou*

(*Xiao Wang*, a tour guide, is conducting a sightseeing tour in *Hangzhou*.)

(W— *Xiao Wang*, a tour guide; T— Tourist)

W: OK, here we are in *Hangzhou*. We Chinese have a saying, 'There is paradise in heaven and there are *Suzhou* and *Hangzhou* in this world.' This shows the beauty of these two cities. The beauty of *Hangzhou* is associated with the West Lake.

T1: I hear the West Lake offers 10 fabled sceneries. Are we going to see all of them today, *Wang*?

W: No, not all of them. But we will see most of them.

T2: Here's the lake!

T3: My god, it's such a lovely lake!

W: The lake has a water surface of 5.6 square kilometers.

T1: No wonder it looks so huge.

W: We are now walking on what is in fact an island. Here we get one of the 10 sceneries of the West Lake: Autumn Moon over the Calm Lake.

T2: Why is it called 'Autumn Moon over the Calm Lake'?

W: It's so named because in the pavilion over there the great poet *Bai Juyi* of the *Tang* Dynasty would take a rest after drinking a little too much, and watch the moon over the lake.

T2: Very romantic.

W: Now let's board the boat and have a ride on the lake.

Ts: Sure.

(*They get on the boat.*)

T3: Wang, what's that building over there? It looks like some sort of a pavilion.

W: You are right. That's the Heart of Lake Pavilion, situated on an islet. It was built in 1552 and is the largest pavilion on the West Lake. Oh, here we are at the Little *Yingzhou* Island. Let's get off the boat. Please watch your steps.

T3: Oh, god, another world unveils itself to us.

T4: This is a paradise on earth.

(*After some time*)

W: Let's get on the move. We've got to see one more place before heading back to the hotel.

Notes

1. pavilion [pə'viljən] *n.*

亭子

2. unveil [ʌn'veil] *v.*

揭露

Dialogue 2: The Palace Museum

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Hello—excuse me—thank you. If I may have your attention please... Thank you. Before we begin the tour, I'd like to give you a brief history of the museum. The Imperial Palace was the home of the emperors during the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties, when it was known as the 'Forbidden City'. It is the largest surviving complex of historical buildings in China and the heart of *Beijing*.

T: It's very famous all over the world.

G: You are correct. The spacious palace compound stretches one kilometer from north to south and 750 meters on its east-west axis.

T: How large it is!

G: Within the area is a row of magnificent palaces, characterized by red pillars and yellow tiles.

T: It's really magnificent, then why is there a river around it?

G: You mean the moat? The Forbidden City must have been safeguarded in ancient times. Today the entire Imperial Palace complex functions as a museum.

Notes

1. compound ['kɒmpaund] *n.*

混合物

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| 2. characterize ['kærɪktəraɪz] v. | 以……为特点 |
| 3. moat [məʊt] n. | 护城河 |
| 4. safeguard ['seɪfɡɑ:d] v. | 保护 |
| 5. complex ['kɒmpleks] n. | 复合体 |

Professional Practice

The following expressions are useful when describing a visiting scene.

- introduce the sight

First of all, we're going to visit ...

We're now standing outside the main entrance to ...

- say what its main features are

The palace is the home of ...

The museum houses a host of exhibits of ...

It was built in (date)

- mention other attractions or benefits

You can also see ...

There's a ...

- mention possible restrictions

Please note that photography is not allowed.

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(G— Guide; T—Tourist)

G: We're approaching Badaling and you'll see the Great Wall in a short while.

T1: Wonderful! We have been waiting so long for it.

T2: What's the length of the Great Wall?

G: _____ 1 _____ (它长约 6,000 千米). That's why we call it in Chinese 'Wan Li Changcheng'.

T2: No wonder it's said that this wall is the only building that can be seen from the moon in outer space.

T1: And it was built more than 2,000 years ago?

G: Yes, _____ 2 _____ (长城的兴建始于 2,500 多年以前的战国时期). Small Kingdoms built huge walls hoping to protect their territories. When *Qin Shihuang*, the First Emperor unified China in 221 B.C., _____ 3 _____ (他决定把不同的城墙连起来加以延伸). From that we got the Great Wall.

T2: And that's what we're going to see, right?

G: No, not really. _____ 4 _____ (我们将在八达岭看见的这段长城建于明代).

T1: What are those towers on the wall spaced at equal distances from each other?

G: They're _____ 5 _____ (烽火台) The Great Wall, you know, was constructed in ancient

times to guard against invasion by nomadic tribes from the north. When people found enemy troops approaching, they would _____ 6 _____ (从这个台上放烟火信号) .

When the guards in the neighboring tower saw the signals, they would do the same. In this manner, the signals would be relayed to the capital.

T2: What a striking idea these ancient Chinese had!

T1: _____ 7 _____ (那它有多高呢) ?

G: The average height is about 7.5 meters. Now, we are here at the No.4 southern Tower, the summit of the wall at *Badaling*.

G: Today, we're all great men because _____ 8 _____ (俗话说不到长城非好汉) .



Part III Reading

Text A Ancient Chinese Architecture

For most visitors to China, sightseeing means a daily encounter with Chinese architecture of one type or another ranging from temples through gardens, mausoleums, pagodas, imperial palaces to residential houses.

The Forbidden City in *Beijing* best exemplifies the elements of palace architecture. Imposing buildings, like the three great Halls of Harmony, stand well-spaced along the central axis. Facing south and rising from a terrace, these buildings represent the supreme power and authority emperors enjoyed during the feudalistic dynasties. The living accommodations of the imperial family are found at the back of the city. Clustered around the Great Halls at a distance are numerous smaller buildings where the more influential eunuchs and concubines were locked in struggle for power and influence.



To the south of the Forbidden City is the Temple of Heaven, an exquisite example of what foreigners might call religious architecture, for it was here that the emperor would go twice a year to carry out ritual ceremonies of sacrifice, expressing gratitude to Heaven for the previous harvest and praying for the next harvest. Constructed without the use of a single nail, the round 39-meter-high Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests has a three-tier roof, whose tiles are

painted deep blue, symbolizing the color of heaven. The roof is supported by 28 pillars, of which the four most massive ones represent the four seasons. The double ring consisting of two circles of twelve pillars represents the 12 months, plus the traditional divisions of the Chinese day, each comprising of two hours.

Visitors who see Chinese buildings will invariably notice the extensive use of timber as a building material in addition to bricks and tiles. That is because timber was not only easily available and transportable but also was very practical. Heavy posts are capable of carrying the roof while the wood could be carved for decoration. After all, who would fail to be impressed by the highly elaborate decorations in those buildings?

Pagodas are as much a part of Chinese scenery as churches are in England. Tall or low, massive or slender, pagodas dot China's landscape as evidence of Buddhist influence on and merge with Chinese culture. The oldest existing pagoda, also built of wood, is located in *Yingxian* County in north *Shanxi*. The 67.13 meter-high pagoda should have survived all the changes of life for more than 900 years, including some strong earthquakes, was a miracle. Because it is out of the way, most visitors do not see this pagoda. More frequently visited pagodas are the Great Wild Goose Pagoda in *Xi'an*, the Pagoda of Six Harmonies in *Hangzhou*, and the Forest of Pagodas near *Shaolin* Monastery in *Henan*, central China, to name just a few.

What is it that gives China's building impressive Chinese characteristics? It is the combination of the massive, often curved roof, the predominant use of timber, the terrace, the corbel construction, and the dazzlingly colorful decoration.

The roofs of Chinese temples and palaces lend an air of weightlessness to the generally large and massive buildings. The eaves, often slightly upturned, seem to let the entire roof float above the building as if carried on invisible columns. Another way of achieving this illusion of floating is the double roof. Here the roof is constructed in two stages and the low wall separating the two suggests a small additional story. A practical function of upturned roof gutters is to ensure enough light inside the building while making it easy to carry off rain-water. Additionally, the roofs of palaces are covered with glazed tiles. As the emperor's color was yellow, those of the imperial palace are in yellow.

Buildings in China, be they temples or palaces or pagodas, rise invariably from a terrace. That is as it should be, for the wooden frame, however flexible it is, has to be protected from any erosion of water. Old texts, however, point to a symbolic cosmological meaning when they state 'the Heaven covers and the Earth carries'. The terrace in these terms represents the Earth and the roof the Heaven. Thus we come to the recurrent theme of ancient Chinese philosophy, which is a complete harmony between man and nature.

No discussion of traditional Chinese buildings can be completed without a mention of the corbel construction. Developed by Chinese craftsmen over the centuries, it is the ultimate form or style of Chinese architecture that is the pride of the Chinese nation and the admiration of foreigners. While posts and beams satisfy structural requirements and are often built without the benefit of glue or nails, corbels and brackets are artfully combined into incredibly complex and visually intriguing structures to support the roof. These corbel systems also give a clue to the social status of the owner of a house because ordinary people were not permitted to have them: they were the privilege of people of rank.

Decorations for ancient Chinese buildings are largely of two types, i.e., colorful paintings and decorative sculptures. The former plays a decorative, symbolic or protective role. A classic example

is found in the Long Corridor of the Summer Palace in *Beijing*. Decorative sculptures, which are found both inside and outside the main buildings, range from brick sculptures on walls, stone sculptures on bars to the small sculptures of mythological beasts atop a palace or temple roof ridge and the large ones of men and beasts in front of a mausoleum. For example, in front of the Hall of Preserving Harmony there is 200-ton stone on the terrace which is an intricately carved design of dragon and phoenix.

Words and Expressions

(1) the central axis [ˈæksɪs]	中轴线
(2) eunuch [ˈjuːnək] <i>n.</i>	太监
(3) concubine [ˈkɒŋkjubain] <i>n.</i>	妃子
(4) be locked in	忙于
(5) corbel [ˈkɔːbəl] <i>n.</i>	梁托, 翹托
(6) cosmological [ˌkɒzməˈlɒdʒɪkəl] <i>adj.</i>	宇宙论的
(7) recurrent [rɪˈkʌrənt] <i>adj.</i>	反复出现的
(8) complete harmony of man and nature	天人合一
(9) bracket [ˈbrækit] <i>n.</i>	托架
(10) mythological [ˌmɪθəˈlɒdʒɪkəl] <i>adj.</i>	神话的

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. Can you describe a classic example of Chinese palace architecture?
2. What is the Temple of Heaven built for?
3. What material is mostly used for buildings in ancient Chinese architecture and why?
4. Name some famous pagodas in China.
5. What's typical of ancient Chinese buildings?

Text B The Terra-Cotta Legions



For over two thousand years, *Shanxi* Province was the cultural, economic and political core of China. Its cities, *Xi'an* included, were the capitals of 13 dynasties. The region, long before recent decades, already held a richness of attractions well beyond its relatively small size. But today, *Xi'an* is known first and foremost for its Terra-cotta Warriors.

The Terra-cotta Warriors and Horses listed as the Eighth Wonders of the World and consisting of more than 7,000 life-sized Terra-cotta warriors and horses, were unearthed near the Tomb of Emperor *Qin Shihuang*. The tomb is a rammed-soil mound reaching approximately 154 feet into the air. In 1974, three large pits of Terra-cotta figures were found about 1 mile east of the mausoleum. The excavation revealed more than 7,000 pieces of pottery figurines, bronze chariots

and horses and weapons. Three burial pits were found. The No. 1 pit contains a rectangular formation of chariots and army troops; the No. 2 pit holds a winding formation of chariots, army troops and cavalries; and the No. 3 pit is designed to symbolize a command headquarters. The Museum of Emperor *Qin Shihuang's* Tomb Figures of Soldiers and Horses is one of the 10 most famous places in China, and was announced as a world cultural heritage site by UNESCO.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|---|-------------|
| (1) foremost ['fɔ:məʊst] <i>adj.</i> | 最先的, 首要的 |
| (2) terra-cotta [ˌterə'kɒtə] <i>n. & adj.</i> | 红褐色 (的); 陶瓦 |
| (3) unearth [ʌn'ə:θ] <i>v.</i> | 挖掘 |
| (4) ram [ræm] <i>v.</i> | 打土使其坚固 |
| (5) pit [pit] <i>n.</i> | 坑 |
| (6) mausoleum ['mɔ:sə,li:əm] <i>n.</i> | 陵墓 |
| (7) excavation [ˌekske'veɪʃən] <i>n.</i> | 发掘 |
| (8) rectangular [rek'tæŋgjulə] <i>adj.</i> | 长方形的 |
| (9) cavalry ['kævəlri] <i>n.</i> | 骑兵团 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

- Which city were the capitals of 13 dynasties?
- What is *Xi'an* known for first and foremost today?
- When were the pits of Terra-cotta discovered?
- How many burial pits were found?



Part IV Writing

Letter of Apology

Whether or not a tour operator can deal with letters of complaint successfully means a lot in tourism. If you can smooth the conflict as soon as possible, you will win another contract. Try to be polite and sincere while troubles occur. Memorizing the following phrases:

Thank you for bringing this matter to our attention.

We are very sorry to hear that...

We apologise for...

Please accept our apologies for...

Please be assured that we will...

We value your custom highly.

Your satisfaction is our priority.

Please find enclosed a voucher for...

We have decided to compensate you.

Sample

Beijing Tour

Room 1100, Resort Center , 16 *Xin Yuan Li, Beijing* ,China .P.R 100027

1407 East Elm Street

Big Rapids, MI 49307

February 24 2008

Ms Helen Thompson,

Thank you for your letter of 10 January and for bringing this matter to our attention. We are sorry to hear that your holiday was not as enjoyable as expected. Unfortunately, you were victims of air traffic congestion at the airport which is beyond our control and we regret that the staff at the terminal were not very helpful.

Please accept our apologies for the condition of the hotel. We were assured by the owners that the redecoration would be completed in time and we have taken measures to ensure that the hotel will come up to the required standard.

After investigating the flight times we have decided to compensate you. Please find enclosed a voucher offering 20% reduction on your next booking with us.

Yours sincerely,

Wang lin

Customer Services Manager

Exercise



Make a list of the points you want to make, then use the following information to plan a reply to a complaint.

Wrongly-reserved room, dialect misunderstanding, poor central heating, etc.



Cultural Tips

(Raffaella P., Italy, with a Japanese friend)

Edinburgh, Scotland, August 1990. I had been there for three weeks with my cousin Paola and my friend Valentina to study English.

Once, Valentina and I went looking for my cousin Paola on campus where she was taking her classes. There we met Yuko and a Japanese friend of hers. As Yuko lived in the same house as Paola and they were also in the same class, I asked her whether she had recently seen Paola. After her

negative reply, I gently asked her to say to Paola that we were looking for her, if she happened to meet her.

I noticed that after this request Yuko and her friend stood there instead of continuing their walk, but I did not pay much attention and walked away.

After fifteen minutes we came back the same way. From afar, I noticed that Yuko and her friend were still standing exactly in the same place as before. They were still waiting for Paola! We decided to hide and to wait for them to go away, in order not to embarrass them. After some ten more minutes, it was clear that they would not leave unless we did something. So I went to them and gently told them that ‘it was OK, now Valentina and I would wait for Paola’ and thanked them for their patience. They thanked us profusely (for releasing them from their duty, I suppose) and then they walked away.

Notes

Japanese communications patterns are based on understatements and reading indirect messages. Therefore, if you formulate a vague request, the Japanese may interpret it as an indirect way of issuing a formal command. Add to that possible language problems and the fact that ‘waiting’ does have the same connotations universally: you have the necessary ingredients for this minor, but embarrassing intercultural misunderstanding.

How could you tell Yuko that you only want her to inform Paola if she happens to run in to her, not to look for her actively, even less wait for her to pass by? Notice that if you say literally that this is what you want, as Raffaella did in the story, Yuko may think that you want more, as the Japanese are used to stating less than what is really requested.

Unit 6

Chinese Landscape Gardening

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to plan a tour with a travel agent
- read Chinese Gardens and their features
- write a letter of safety information
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. What is the Taoist idea that influenced Chinese gardens?
2. How many kinds of gardens are there in China? what are they?
3. Can you name some of the representative Chinese gardens?

Task 2

Listen to a short passage twice and complete the passage.

Most private gardens were built in the south, especially in cities south of the Yangtze River. In almost every garden, there is a large space in the garden set in a landscape of artistically arranged rockeries, _____ (1), pavilions, bridges, trees, and flowers. Surrounding the beautiful scene are small open areas _____ (2) by corridors or walls with lattice windows (漏窗) or beautifully shaped doors. Buildings in the garden were used for receiving guests, holding banquets, reading, or _____ (3). They are open on all sides and are often situated near the water. The winding corridors connect various buildings and also provide a covered veranda as shelter from the _____ (4) and shade from the _____ (5).

Suzhou, known as the home of gardens, _____ (6) the most and the best traditional private gardens in China. Gardens in *Yangzhou* are characterized by their architectural _____ (7) and artistic rockeries, whereas *Guangdong* style gardens are distinguished by large ponds, brightly colored buildings, and luxuriant _____ (8).

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. Most imperial gardens are located in south China.
5. Imperial gardens occupy small space.
6. Most of these gardens have three sections which serve administrative, residential, and recreational purposes.
7. The imperial gardens are designed according to geometry principles.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: *Suzhou*

(T— Tourist; A — A Travel Agent)

T: Good morning, I'm staying here a few days and I am interested in sightseeing in *Suzhou*. Can you recommend the best places to go?

A: Sure. Is this your first visit?

T: Yes.

A: OK. *Suzhou* is a beautiful city. It is called the Venice of the East because of its network of canals, and it is world-famous especially for its landscaped gardens. There are about 150 gardens in *Suzhou*. Some of them are more than 1,000 years old. These gardens are not large but curious in their designs, and they bring together the beauties of nature, architecture and painting.

T: That's wonderful.

A: Here is a brochure. They can give you further information.

T: How long does a one-day tour take?

A: About eight hours. The bus starts from here at 8:30 in the morning. You should be back by 4:30 in the afternoon.

T: What is the cost of the tour?

A: It's one hundred *yuan*, including lunch.

T: Sounds reasonable. Thank you very much. You've been very helpful.

Notes

1. recommend [ˌrekə'mend] v. 推荐
2. Venice ['venis] n. 威尼斯
3. architecture [ˌɑ:kɪ'tektʃə] n. 建筑

Dialogue 2: The Yu Garden

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

T: Excuse me, I've been attending the conference here and tomorrow I've got a free day to do some sightseeing. Do you have any information about the city?

G: Yes, of course. What kind of information do you need exactly?

T: You know, places to visit, but I haven't got much time because I'm flying back to the US on Sunday night.

G: Let me see. How about visiting the Yu Garden?

T: Oh yes, my colleague said it's worth a visit.

G: That's right. It's an ancient garden dating back to 400 years ago. It was constructed and built up in the Ming Dynasty. And it has been reconstructed and restored during the past hundred years.

T: I guess it's a hard job to do the restoration.

G: Yes, it was. The garden has an area of only several hectares. Visitors are struck by its ingenious architecture and exotic layout. There are more than 30 places of distinctive and fascinating scenes like ponds, chambers, pavilions and artificial rockeries. Rare and precious cultural relics are kept.

T: Oh, I'm deeply attracted by its interesting history. And how long do you think it'll take to see everything?

G: You'll probably need about three hours to see it all. Walking around the gardens takes some time.

T: OK, that's a whole morning then.

G: But, you should get there early because there are always very long queues.

T: Oh, right. Oh, and one more thing. Are there any nice tea houses or bars nearby?

G: Well, there are lots of tea houses nearby. You may go and have a drink there.

T: Sounds great. I think I'll go there tomorrow. Thanks.

Notes

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 1. reconstruct [ˌrɪkən'strʌkt] v. | 重建 |
| 2. restore [rɪ'stɔː] v. | 修复 |
| 3. ingenious [ɪn'dʒɪːniəs] adj. | 精巧的, 富有创意的 |
| 4. exotic [ɪg'zɒtɪk] adj. | 异国情调的 |
| 5. rockery ['rɒkəri] n. | 假山 |

Professional Practice

The following tips are useful when showing agreement or disagreement.

1. We often show agreement by repeating an idea or adding a supporting idea.

You're right. It's expensive.

Yes, I agree. We should charge them more.

That sounds like a good idea. If we do that we'll get more bookings.

I'd go along with that.

Point taken.

2. When disagreeing it is important to soften the impact by

- using expressions such as

I'm sorry but ...

I'm afraid ...

- or acknowledging the value of the speaker's idea

That's a good idea but ...

That might be possible but ...

We appreciate your position but ...

I see your point but ...

- or giving a reason for disagreeing

It's a good idea but it'd be very expensive.

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(G— Guide; T—Tourist)

G: _____ 1 _____ (女士们, 先生们, 今天我们将要参观颐和园) .

T: Where is it?

G: _____ 2 _____ (它位于北京西郊) .

T: _____ 3 _____ (颐和园是如何建成的) ?

G: In 1888, *Cixi* selected *Qingyiyuan* as the site of the New Summer Palace. The name *Yiheyuan* means Garden of Nurtured Harmony or Garden of Smiling Harmony. She spent most of her time in this place after its completion.

T: Who is *Cixi*?

G: *Cixi* is the concubine of Emperor *Xianfeng*. The mother of the infant Emperor *Tongzhi*. She assumed the regency which lasted about fifty years in the name of the empress dowager.

T: _____ 4 _____ (颐和园主要由哪几部分组成) ?

G: The Summer Palace is divided into 3 sections, the halls for political activities, the living quarters and religious buildings. From an architectural point of view, the palace represents a dream of an early paradise.

T: How big is the palace?

- G: _____ 5 _____ (颐和园占地 290 公顷), including the areas of *Kunming* Lake and Longevity Hill.
- T: _____ 6 _____ (颐和园是如何得名的) ?
- G: The Summer Palace lies nearly 11.2 kilometers, northeast of *Beijing* at the foot of Western Hill. Because of its location, it is usually cooler than other places in the city, hence the name the Summer Palace.



Part III Reading

Text A Chinese Landscape Gardening



As early as in the 6th century, Japan had already known of Chinese landscape gardening with Europeans learning of the Chinese style through Marco Polo who visited many *Song* Dynasty gardens in southern China during the *Yuan* Dynasty. In the 17th century, Chinese landscape gardening was introduced to England where it then spread to France and the rest of Europe. In the late 18th century, Chinese landscaping had a huge influence on the European Romantic Movement,

European landscaping moved away from a stiff aristocratic style to a more natural style found in Chinese gardens.

Western and Eastern landscape gardening bear different forms and styles because of different philosophies and sense of aesthetic beauty. In form, Western landscaping embodies artificial beauty with symmetrical, regular and well-knit layouts. Geometry is ever-present as flowers and plants are pruned upright and square. Chinese landscape gardening doesn't require symmetry or fixed regulations as plants, trees and buildings are built to a natural form. Whereas Western landscaping theory aims to remedy the defects of nature, Chinese landscape gardening blends plants and buildings into an organic whole and imitates nature by building mountains (rocky outcroppings) with flowing water to present a quality suggestive of poetry or painting. To fully enjoy the beauty of Chinese gardens, it's important to understand the philosophy implied through the sceneries.

THE ORIGIN & DEVELOPMENT OF CHINESE LANDSCAPE GARDENING

Chinese landscape gardening has a history of more than 4,000 years with the earliest gardens appearing in 2000 B.C. during the *Shang* Dynasty. *Shang* kings used forests and mountains for hunting and as sightseeing destinations. Chinese landscape gardening would develop from this embryonic form of garden.

The first gardens in early Chinese history were imperial status symbols of the kings and

aristocrats. Their most distinguishing features were that they covered large areas and had dual purpose, for hunting and for holding sacrificial rites to the god.

Gradually the appeal of gardens spread beyond the aristocracy to officials, poets, painters and traders who hoped to recreate the scenic spots they saw in the convenience of their hometowns. Early private gardens were small and featured stones piled into mountains, water channels were usually planted with pine and cypress trees and bamboo. These gardens recreated natural scenes and are named ‘gardens with mountains and water sceneries’.

The wealth of the *Tang* Dynasty spurred the building of gardens. The imperial gardens were in *Chang'an*, present day *Xi'an* and the largest was called the Forbidden Garden. This garden was 14km wide and 12km long and held 24 gardens and building complex. It was the main imperial getaway with scenic spots and different activities like hunting, singing and dancing.

Landscaping painting became an independent branch of Chinese painting during the *Tang* Dynasty. Mountains, water, trees and villages were popular subjects and painters sought to embody the harmony between man and nature with their paintings. Painters not just painted sceneries, but expressed their thoughts and emotions with the images. Gardens were built in a similar vein, the garden designer attempts to harmonize architectural beauty with natural beauty so the visitor sees a complete picture.

During the *Song* Dynasty, landscape gardening became even more popular and spread further down the social hierarchy. Owners of teahouses began to build gardens to solicit customers and everyday commoners could enjoy the beauty of gardens. Landscape painting now had greater influence on landscape gardening than before. For example, the emperor would hire a commercial painter to paint a design and the garden would be built according to the painting. Great detail was given to the lines, structures and decoration of courtyards, with particular attention paid to the placement of small ornaments.

Chinese landscape gardening reached a golden age in the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties and became an art that blended music, painting, poetry and architecture. Gardens began to influence each other and designers referred to other gardens for inspiration. The number of gardens greatly increased, with many of them private gardens such classics like the Humble Administrator's Garden, the Master of Nets Garden and the *Ge* Garden. Imperial gardens like the Old Summer Palace and the Summer Palace began imitating and copying ideas from private gardens.

CLASSIFICATION OF CHINESE LANDSCAPE GARDENING

Classification By Geographical Location

Northern gardens are large and have grand structures. Because of the northern climate, there is not a large variety of water areas or evergreen trees and they are not as delicate as their counterparts in southern China. Northern gardens are found mainly in *Beijing*, *Xi'an*, *Luoyang* and *Kaifeng*, with the gardens in *Beijing* as most representative of the northern style.

Southern gardens cover smaller areas than the ones in the north, but have a variety of waterscapes and evergreen trees. The scenery is delicate and cozy. They are found in *Nanjing*,

Shanghai, Wuxi, Suzhou, Hangzhou and Yangzhou, with the gardens in *Suzhou* considered the best examples. Southern gardens are artistic designs consisting of buildings, mountains, water and plant life. These gardens blend nature, architecture and painting into a unified whole.

Guangdong is in a subtropical zone so Cantonese gardens feature more waterscapes, vegetation and they feature subtropical scenery, tall and spacious buildings.

Classification By Owner

Imperial gardens are large and grandiose, and were built using natural mountains and waterways. The most famous ones include the Imperial Forest Garden built during the *Han* Dynasty, and in the *Tang* Dynasty the Forbidden Garden in *Xi'an*. The current imperial gardens are *Qing* Dynasty creations with *Beihai* Park, the Summer Palace and the Old Summer Palace in *Beijing*, and the Imperial Summer Villa in *Chengde* as the finest examples. These gardens highlight scenic spots of China's different regions, blending themes of gods and legends with anecdotes of well-known historical personalities. Particular attention was given to the connection of independent sceneries within the garden.

Private gardens were relatively small with small mountains and waterways. Most only measured one hectare and very few were four or five hectares. Within such a confined space, particular attention was given to incorporating small buildings, manmade mountains and waterways, and to the placement of vegetation and decorations. The theme of the garden varied according to the taste of the owner, some showed the owner's upright and outspoken character and others presented the owner's pursuit of a plain and simple life. The private gardens of *Suzhou, Yangzhou* and *Nanjing* are considered some of China's most distinguished, with *Suzhou* being home to the majority of them.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|---|---------|
| (1) aristocratic [ˌæristəˈkrætɪk] <i>adj.</i> | 贵族的 |
| (2) aesthetic [iːsˈθetɪk] <i>adj.</i> | 美学的 |
| (3) embody [ɪmˈbɒdi] <i>v.</i> | 体现 |
| (4) symmetrical [sɪˈmetrɪkəl] <i>adj.</i> | 对称的 |
| (5) prune [pruːn] <i>v.</i> | 修剪 (树枝) |
| (6) remedy ['remɪdi] <i>v.</i> | 补救 |
| (7) embryonic [ˌembriˈɒnɪk] <i>adj.</i> | 萌芽阶段的 |
| (8) cypress ['saɪprɪs] <i>n.</i> | 柏树 |
| (9) hierarchy ['haɪərəːki] <i>n.</i> | 等级制度 |
| (10) counterpart ['kauntəˌpɑːt] <i>n.</i> | 对等物 |
| (11) grandiose ['grændiəs] <i>adj.</i> | 冠冕堂皇的 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. What's the difference between Western and Eastern garden landscaping?

2. What's the unique feature of the first gardens in early Chinese history?
3. When was the golden age of Chinese garden landscaping?
4. Describe the different features of northern and southern gardens.
5. List the famous gardens in text A.

Text B Features of Chinese Gardens

Although there is a great variety in Chinese gardens, and each garden has its own particular features, there are some common features.

The pursuit of poetic beauty and an artistic ideal as Chinese gardens are closely connected with poetry and painting. The artistic creation of gardens and paintings are interlinked, with both 'in pursuit of poetic meaning', an attempt to recreate a poem or painting in a garden setting. Such characteristics find their expression in the design of the mountains and water. The architectural design of gardens is very detailed and each garden has its own theme content, most of which are taken from well-known poems and have layouts based on landscape paintings. In general, gardens aim at the harmonization of space and natural scenes according to artistic principles.

Gardens take advantage of scenes to express the designer's emotion and arouse the visitor's associations and imagination. An artistic expression of emotion is a basic theme in art and Chinese gardens are no exception. Because gardens are a recreation of nature in an artificial setting, the process of creating a garden requires imagination and innovation. Firstly, water and mountains are created using stones and ditches and their mutually dependent pairing brings out a striking effect. Secondly, choosing an lucky name is an important part of creating associations with the garden and nature. Names are inscribed on stone tablets, gatepost couplets and door boards. These two measures help create a picture for the visitor and set the mood for the garden.

Creating a sense of space within a limited area is important, especially in small private gardens. In order to create more scenes, designers construct mountains, waterways, plant trees and flowers and breed fish. Fixed scenes are given varied views and perspectives by using contrast, offsetting the point of view and by using winding paths. These measures give a new view at every point throughout the small garden, thus creating a larger sense of spatial freedom. Some methods include making the river banks curved with irregular stones, planting flowers and trees according to different seasons, varying the length of corridors, and using decorative windows and gates. A careful observer will notice in *Suzhou* garden that if there is a window facing a white wall, there will be no rockery or vegetation within the frame. The design is meant to create a sense of exploration, the scenes aren't in the open and offer different impressions from different angles.

Gardens borrow and use the scenery of the nearby surroundings. Chinese garden emphasizes the arrangement of different scenes inside and outside the garden in proper proportions. For example, in the *Ge* Garden in *Yangzhou*, there is the Summer Mountain, which topped with a pavilion. From this pavilion the scenery of the Slender West Lake can be seen in the distance. In *Wuxi*, the *Jichang* Garden borrows the pagoda in *Xi Shan* as a backdrop to set off the scenes in the garden.

The design and landscaping of Chinese gardens has evolved into an independent technique in its own right and it always includes four essential features.

MOUNTAIN SCENERY

Mountains are the foremost feature in forming garden scenery. During the reign of Emperor *Wudi* of the *Han* Dynasty when laborers shaped a small island from soil they dug out while repairing a pond. This island was an early example of artificial mountains. Later garden designers, instead of merely duplicating the size of mountains, stressed the importance of details so artificial mountains closely resembled their real counterparts. From the *Tang* and *Song* Dynasties, and with the development of landscape painting, landscape gardeners began paying greater attention to construction techniques.

WATER SCENERY

Waterways are one of the most important scenic features of a garden. Waterscapes in a garden can be static lakes or dynamic waterfalls. There are three ways to construct artificial water scenery.

COVERINGS

Covering the water bank with thick growth of grass and constructing buildings on the shore. Architectural constructions are usually erected above the water in order to create a sense of flowing water from the base of the structure. Plants and grass along the water will give it an appearance of tranquility and stillness.

THE CONNOTATION OF CHINESE GARDENS

Traditional Chinese thought places humans as a small part of the infinite universe. Each living creature is a part of nature and the intrinsic link between man and nature can't be broken. Chinese gardens are an effort to imitate nature in their homes, to conform to nature without breaking this fundamental connection. Each part of the garden is meant to highlight and remind visitors of the harmony between man and nature, with the goal of breeding harmony between character and emotion.

Imperial gardens symbolized the supreme power of emperors, but were also places of recreation. Private gardens were places of relaxation and contemplation, a sanctuary to satisfy people's longing for nature. Regardless of geographic location or size, Chinese gardens represent a Chinese tradition of finding harmony within the world by turning to nature.

Words and Expressions

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----|----|
| (1) pursuit | [pə'sju:t] | n. | 追求 |
| (2) interlink | [,intə'liŋk] | v. | 连接 |
| (3) characteristic | [,kærɪktə'ristɪk] | n. | 特点 |
| (4) harmonization | [,hɑ:mənaɪ'zeɪʃən] | n. | 和谐 |

(5) association [ə,səusi'eɪʃən] <i>n.</i>	联想
(6) theme [θi:m] <i>n.</i>	主题
(7) ditch [dɪtʃ] <i>n.</i>	沟渠
(8) inscribe [ɪn'skraɪb] <i>v.</i>	将……刻于，雕于
(9) tablet ['tæblɪt] <i>n.</i>	匾额，写字板
(10) couplet ['kʌplɪt] <i>n.</i>	押韵联句
(11) perspective [pə'spektɪv] <i>n.</i>	看法，远景
(12) offset ['ɒfset] <i>v.</i>	抵消
(13) spatial ['speɪʃəl] <i>adj.</i>	空间的
(14) curve [kə:v] <i>v.</i>	弯曲
(15) vegetation [ˌvedʒɪ'teɪʃən] <i>n.</i>	植被
(16) pagoda [pə'gəʊdə] <i>n.</i>	塔
(17) duplicate ['dʒʊplɪkeɪt] <i>v.</i>	复制
(18) waterscape ['wɔ:təskeɪp] <i>n.</i>	水景
(19) tranquility [træn'kwɪlɪti] <i>n.</i>	平静
(20) connotation [ˌkɒnə'teɪʃən] <i>n.</i>	言外之意
(21) intrinsic [ɪn'trɪnsɪk] <i>adj.</i>	内在的
(22) highlight ['haɪlaɪt] <i>v.</i>	强调，使显著
(23) symbolize ['sɪmbəlaɪz] <i>v.</i>	象征
(24) sanctuary ['sæŋktjuəri] <i>n.</i>	圣所，圣堂
(25) in pursuit of	追求
(26) take advantage of	利用

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. How many essential features does the design and landscaping of Chinese gardens have?
2. Describe the characteristics of mountain scenery.
3. Describe the characteristics of water scenery and coverings.
4. What's the connotation of Chinese gardens?



Part IV Writing

A Health Information Leaflet

While traveling abroad, health and safety are your customers' priority. As a responsible tour agent, you try to notify your clients the following information before the trip.

personal safety when traveling/staying in China

common health problems for travelers
availability of medicines
any necessary precautions

Sample

Although many inner cities can be dangerous, especially at night, China is generally safe for travelers who take reasonable precautions. Never go out on your own. Don't wear expensive accessories or carry large amounts of money with you. Credit cards are accepted in most cities in China. Pickpockets are sometimes a problem. Tap water is unsafe to drink so bottled water is recommended. Always carry a small medical kit when in China in case of flu or a cold.

We hope you have a wonderful trip and thank you for choosing China Travel Service Inc. for your travel arrangements.

Exercise



You receive a tourist letter asking for safety advice for travelers to China. Write a letter of safety information to your clients.



Cultural Tips

Joe is an assistant professor in an American university. Two years ago, he made friends with *Hong*, a Chinese visiting scholar in another American university when he was in the final year of his Ph. D program. He began teaching in a university after graduation. *Hong*, who had been back to China, recommended Joe to her university. Soon, Joe was invited by *Hong's* university for a five day visit to give lecture.

Joe was very excited about the trip, as it was his first visit to China. *Hong* and the Chair of her department met him at the airport, then put him up at a nice hotel. They had arranged a big dinner for him in the evening and made Joe feel very welcome. At the end of the evening, *Hong* gave him the itinerary for the next day. Apart from the lectures, all his time would be filled with meals, concerts, shopping, and a one-day tour to a nearby resort, all paid for by the university. Joe had thought he would have time to explore the city and the area, but the itinerary would leave him no free time.

Joe was grateful to *Hong* and the host department who took great care of him during his visit. At the end of the visit, he insisted in treating *Hong* and the Department Chair to dinner to thank them. But they said a dinner had been arranged. Joe was very frustrated. He was not very happy at the dinner, and did not show any enthusiasm when the Department Chair said that they hoped Joe would come back for another visit.

When it was time for Joe to leave, he did not know what to say. He knew he should be grateful for everything *Hong* had done for him, but he had also felt deprived and trapped since he never found the time to do anything by himself. The tight itinerary never allowed him to explore on his own; he felt especially annoyed that all the plans had been made without consulting him. Ironically, as soon as Joe left, *Hong* was very relieved. She felt Joe's visit had been successful but it had required most of her time to make sure that Joe's visit would be smooth one. She never knew that Joe, still upset about the tight control placed on his schedule, complained to the person sitting next to him on the plane, 'While in China, I sometimes felt like a prisoner!'

(*From Introducing Intercultural Communication* by Xu Lisheng)

Unit 7

Religion in China

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to talk about temples
- read about religions and their history in China
- write a ski holiday itinerary to promote a ski resort
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. What should tourists to China seek?
2. Where could they find the sacred?
3. Is religion in China more down to earth than ceremonial?

Task 2

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Buddhism is said to be founded in India in _____ (1) by Siddhartha Gautama (乔达摩 • 悉达多) (known by the titles Sakyamuni (释迦牟尼) and Tathagata (如来佛)), the son of a nobleman and member of the Kshatriya caste (梵语——刹帝利种姓) near the present _____ (2) of India and Nepal. Around _____ (3), it was formally introduced into China, and later localized. There are _____ (4) of Buddhism in China: Mahayana (Big Raft) Buddhism (大乘佛教) that, mainly, the *Han* people believe in and Hinayana (Little Raft) Buddhism (小乘佛教) that some ethnic minorities (少数民族) in *Yunnan* Province as the *Dai*, Blang, Achang and De'ang believe in. Under the two types are numerous sects (教派), which _____ (5) the same basic principles of the religion.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. According to Buddhism, everyone will experience all sorts of sorrow in his life.
5. The achievement of happiness comes from the desire.
6. Desire can be systematically abandoned if one follows the Noble Four- Fold Path.
7. The Buddhist aims to attain 'nirvana' that is a state of supreme spirit.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: Visiting the Jade Buddha Temple

(G—Guide; T—Tourist)

G: Good morning Ladies and Gentlemen, welcome to the Jade Buddha Temple.

T: Could you give us some information about it?

G: Yes, of course. The temple is a monastery of great fame south of the Yangtze River, it was firstly built in 1882. Later the temple was partly destroyed by fire in 1918, it was rebuilt based on the architectural style of the *Song* Dynasty on the present site.

T: Well, does the temple really house the jade Buddha?

G: Yes, there are two white jade statues of Sakyamuni enshrined in the temple. During the reign of Emperor *Guangxu* of the *Qing* Dynasty, a monk named *Hui Gen* from Mount Putuo went on a pilgrimage to India, Burma and brought back five jade statues of Sakyamuni. On his way back to Mount Putuo via *Shanghai*, he left two jade statues and had a temple especially built as a shrine for these two statues, hence the name Jade Buddha Temple. Now, let's go inside to have a look.

(entering the temple)

G: The first hall is the Heavenly King Hall which enshrines and worships Maitreya, the Laughing Buddha.

T: What is that big hall?

G: That's the Grand Hall. Its total construction area is nearly three thousand square meters, and from the ground up to the roof it is about thirty feet high.

T: It looks magnificent.

G: The Jade Buddha Chamber is on the second floor. Let's go upstairs.

T: How beautiful it is! It is carved of pure jade, isn't it?

G: Yes, the statue is carved out of a single piece of white jade. It is 1.92 meters tall and 1.34 meters wide. This Buddha is in sitting posture, the other one in reclining posture is enshrined in Reclining Buddha

Chamber in the west of the monastery. Both statues are considered as precious relics of Buddhist art.

T: It's marvelous! No wonder the temple enjoys a good reputation.

G: In a moment, we will have lunch at the nearby restaurant. After lunch, you can take a walk on the river bank, but you need to be back at our meeting place in front of the temple at 2 o'clock.

Notes

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. monastery ['mɒnəstəri] <i>n.</i> | 修道院 |
| 2. Sakyamuni [ˌsɑ:kjə'mu:ni] | 释迦牟尼佛 |
| 3. enshrine [in'ʃraɪn] <i>v.</i> | 将……置于寺庙内 |
| 4. pilgrimage ['pilgrimɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> | 朝圣之旅 |
| 5. Reclining Buddha [ri'klaɪnɪŋ] | 卧佛 |

Dialogue 2: *Lingyin Temple*

(T— Tourist; G— Guide)

G: OK everybody? We're now standing outside the main entrance to *Lingyin Temple* which is one of the best examples of China's Buddhist architecture.

T: Could you tell me something about it? I just can't wait any longer.

G: With pleasure. *Lingyin Temple*, or the Soul's Retreat Temple, was founded in A.D.326 by the Indian monk, *Hui Li*. It quickly became a center of worship for the *Chan (Zhen)* Buddhist sect, and once served as home to more than three thousand monks.

T: It must have a long history.

G: Yes. During its turbulent history the temple has been destroyed and rebuilt sixteen times over with the current structures dating back to the late *Qing Dynasty* (1644—1911).

T: I'd like to know the basic pattern.

G: Sure. The main entrance, secured by heavy gates, is guarded by sculptures of the Four Guardians of the temple. Behind these is a short spirit wall—this wall is believed to prevent evil spirits from entering the temple. Passing the wall, you will find yourself in a courtyard on the far side of which stand several enormous bronze vessels. They are incense burners. Behind them is the first temple pavilion, housing the statues of Buddha. In front of the main Buddha, stands an altarpiece hosting such objects as candleholders, incense burners and an offering plate containing fruit, money and even candy.

T: It seems that such arrangements must be the native religious culture.

- G: Yes. At *Lingyin Temple*, the central statue is an eighteen-foot high statue of Sakyamuni, or the Historical Buddha, made in the *Tang Dynasty* (607—960). Carved out of twenty-four pieces of camphor wood, it is said to be one of the largest wooden buddhas in the world. Walk to the back of the pavilion you will come to the next courtyard.
- T: I was told that generally there are three groups of buildings separated by courtyards for Chinese Temples, is that true?
- G: Depending on the size of the temple complex, the number of successive courtyards will vary, with the most important buildings set deep into the complex so as to ensure ample protection from evil spirits.
- T: Thanks a lot.

Notes

- | | |
|--|----------|
| 1. sect [sekt] <i>n.</i> | 教派, 宗派 |
| 2. turbulent [ˈtɜːbjʊlənt] <i>adj.</i> | 动荡的, 骚乱的 |
| 3. sculpture [ˈskʌlptʃə] <i>n.</i> | 雕塑 |
| 4. Four Guardians | 四大天王 |

Professional Practice

The following tips are useful when handling complaints.

1. introducing your complaint

I'm not one to make a fuss, but ...

I don't want to complain, but ...

I'm sorry, but I really feel I have to make a complaint about ...

2. when responding to a written complaint

● show sympathy

We are very sorry to hear that you did not enjoy your ...

I fully understand.

I'll do my best to sort it out.

● apologize

We apologize for any inconvenience caused, but ...

● give explanations

We are writing to explain a few points ...

Firstly, we are afraid that we are not responsible for ...

Secondly, ...

Finally, ...

● offer compensation if necessary

Please accept our apologies and an offer of ...

Close with a formal salutation

Yours sincerely

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(A group of tourists are visiting *Lingyin Temple*)

(G—Guide; T— Tourist)

G: We are here at *Linyin Temple*.

T: _____ 1 _____ (灵隐寺是什么意思呢)?

G: It means literally 'a temple for the soul's retreat'. The present temple has two halls. The front hall is the Maitreya Buddha, popularly known as the _____ 2 _____ (弥勒佛). The Buddha is grinning from ear to ear because he is happy to see so many foreign tourists come to pay homage to Buddha.

T: Is this called 'The Four Major Guardians'?

G: Yes. The functions of the four 'generals' are different.

T: _____ 3 _____ (那个手里拿着雨伞的是什么佛)?

G: He is believed to be able to tame all evil-doers, for it is not an ordinary umbrella that he holds in his hand.

T: Why does the Buddha sit on a lotus flower?

G: _____ 4 _____ (莲花是纯洁的象征, 因为莲花出污泥而不染).

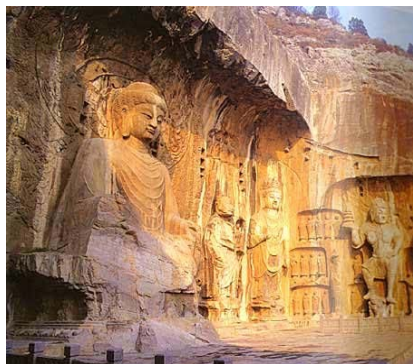
T: What is the function of the giant mirror behind it?

G: _____ 5 _____ (这个镜子是智慧和光明的象征, 它可以驱邪避凶).



Part III Reading

Text A Major Religions in China



In China, citizens enjoy freedom of religious belief, and all normal religious activities are protected by the constitution. There are three main religions in China: Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism. Each religion has added its own mark to the cultural history of China.

Buddhism

Buddhism was founded by Siddhartha Gautama, known as the Buddha (Enlightened One), in southern Nepal in 6B.C.—5B.C. The Buddha achieved enlightenment through meditation and gathered a community of monks to carry on his teachings. Buddhism

teaches that meditation and the practice of good religious and moral behavior can lead to Nirvana, the state of enlightenment, although before achieving Nirvana one is subject to repeated lifetimes that are good or bad depending on one's actions. The doctrines of the Buddha describe temporal life as featuring 'four noble truths': Existence is a realm of suffering; desire, along with the belief in the importance of one's self, causes suffering; achievement of Nirvana ends suffering; and Nirvana is attained only by meditation and by following the path of righteousness in action, thought, and attitude.

Confucianism

Confucianism was founded by Confucius, a Chinese philosopher, in 5B.C.—6B.C. Confucius' sayings and dialogues, known collectively as the *Analects*, were written down by his followers. Confucianism, which grew out of a turbulent time in Chinese history, stresses the relationship between individuals, their families, and society, based on *li* (proper behavior) and *ren* (sympathetic attitude). Its practical, socially oriented philosophy was challenged by the more mystical precepts of Taoism and Buddhism, which were partially incorporated to create neo-Confucianism during the *Song Dynasty* (A.D. 960—1279). There has been increasing influence of Confucianism with the building of a harmonious society.

Taoism

Both a philosophy and a religion, Taoism was founded in China by *Lao-tzu*, who is said to have been born in 604 B.C. Its number of followers is uncertain. It derives primarily from the *Tao-te-ching*, which claims that an ever-changing universe follows the *Tao*, or path. The *Tao* can be known only by emulating its effortless simplicity; Taoism prescribes that people live simply, spontaneously, and in close touch with nature and that they meditate to achieve contact with the *Tao*. Temples and monasteries, maintained by Taoist priests, are important in some Taoist sects. Taoism mainly flourish in *Taiwan*.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|--|---------|
| (1) religious [ri'lɪdʒəs] <i>adj.</i> | 宗教的 |
| (2) constitution [ˌkɒnstɪ'tjuʃən] <i>n.</i> | 宪法 |
| (3) Buddhism ['budizəm] <i>n.</i> | 佛教 |
| (4) Confucianism [kən'fju:ʃənɪzəm] <i>n.</i> | 儒教 |
| (5) Taoism ['tauizəm] <i>n.</i> | 道教 |
| (6) Siddhartha Gautama ['gautəmə] | 乔达摩·悉达多 |
| (7) enlightenment [ɪn'laitənmənt] <i>n.</i> | 教化, 开导 |
| (8) meditation [ˌmedi'teɪʃən] <i>n.</i> | 默想, 沉思 |
| (9) Nirvana [ni'v:ənə] <i>n.</i> | 涅槃 |
| (10) karma [kɑ:mə] <i>n.</i> | 业 |
| (11) Confucius [kən'fju:ʃəs] <i>n.</i> | 孔子 |

(12) Analects	[ˈænələkts]	<i>n.</i>	《论语》，语录
(13) incorporate	[inˈkɔ:pərit]	<i>v.</i>	合并，混合
(14) harmonious	[hɑ:'məuniəs]	<i>adj.</i>	和谐的
(15) emulate	['emju:leɪt]	<i>vt.</i>	积极的效仿，模仿
(16) spontaneously	[spɒn'teɪnjəsli]	<i>adv.</i>	本能地

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. What are the three main religions in China?
2. Who founded Buddhism?
3. Discuss Confucianism and its influence in China.
4. Who founded Taoism?

Text B Religions & Beliefs

China is a country with a great diversity of religions. The main religions are Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism, although it is true to say that Confucianism is a school of philosophy rather than a religion.

Generally speaking, Chinese people do not have a strong religious inclination but despite this three main faiths have had a considerable followers. The fact that Confucianism is a philosophy rather than religion means that it became the orthodox doctrine for Chinese intellectuals in the days of the feudalist society. However, these intellectuals did not stick to their doctrine as a believer clings to his belief. Someone summarized the true attitude of Chinese intellectuals as - they followed the teachings of Confucius and Mencius when they were successful but would turn to Taoism when they were frustrated.

Buddhism was introduced to China from India approximately in A.D.1, becoming increasingly popular and the most influential religion in China after the 4th century. Tibetan Buddhism, as a branch of Chinese Buddhism, is popular primarily in Tibet and Inner Mongolia. Now there is more than 13,000 Buddhist temples in China.

Many people say they are Buddhists yet have never read the sutras. Most people say they believe in gods, destiny, fate, luck and an afterlife. Even so, on most occasions, rather than rely on prayer, people will make decisions all by themselves or resorting either family or friends for help. A visible human being is considered far more reliable than invisible gods or spirits.

Islam probably first reached in China in the mid-seventh century. The *Yuan* Dynasty (1271-1368) witnessed the zenith of prosperity of Islam. Now China has more than 30,000 mosques. Catholic influence reached China several times after the mid-7th century, and Protestantism was introduced into China in the early 19th century. Now there are more than 4,600 Catholic churches and over 12,000 Protestant churches and over 25,000 other types of protestant places of worship in China.

Taoism probably took shape as a religion during the second century, based on the philosophy of *Lao Zi* (traditionally said to be born in 604 B.C.) and his work, the *Dao De Jing* (Classic of the Way and Virtue). China now has more than 1,500 Taoist temples.

Words and Expressions

(1) inclination [ˌɪnkliˈneɪʃən] <i>n.</i>	倾向
(2) orthodox [ˌɒθəˈdɒks] <i>adj.</i>	正统的
(3) doctrine [ˈdɒktrɪn] <i>n.</i>	教义
(4) intellectual [ˌɪntɪˈlektʃəl] <i>n.</i>	知识分子
(5) feudalist [ˈfjuːdəlist] <i>adj.</i>	封建主义的
(6) cling [klɪŋ] <i>v.</i>	坚持
(7) summarize [ˈsʌməraɪz] <i>v.</i>	总结
(8) Mencius [ˈmenʃiəs]	孟子
(9) approximately [əˈprɒksɪmɪtli] <i>adv.</i>	大约
(10) Tibet [tɪˈbet] <i>n.</i>	西藏
(11) Inner Mongolia [ˈɪnə məŋˈɡəʊliə]	内蒙古
(12) Buddhist [ˈbudɪst] <i>adj.&n.</i>	佛教的, 佛教徒
(13) sutra [ˈsutrə] <i>n.</i>	佛经
(14) destiny [ˈdestɪni] <i>n.</i>	命运
(15) Islam [ˈɪzlæm] <i>n.</i>	伊斯兰教
(16) zenith [ˈzenɪθ] <i>n.</i>	顶峰
(17) Protestantism [ˈprɒtɪstəntɪzəm] <i>n.</i>	新教
(18) Protestant [ˈprɒtɪstənt] <i>n.</i>	新教徒

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. How many followers of various faiths?
2. What does the fact that Confucianism is a philosophy rather than religion mean?
3. How many Buddhist temples are there in China now?
4. How many mosques and Taoist temples are there in China now?



Part IV Writing

Plan a Ski Holiday

Ski holiday is characteristic of winter vacation. A well-organized ski holiday distinguish your service from others. The following terms are useful in skiing programmes:

drag lift, chair lift, cable car, snowboard, skis, bindings, boots, poles, goggles, helmet, gloves, ki jacket, ski pass

Sample

Thank you for your enquiry about our entertainment programme. As you can see, we offer package holiday of winter activities and a variety of entertainment.

Programme of events:

Day 1 Tourists are met at the airport by the tour representative in the morning. Beginners are given their first ski lesson by professionally trained instructors. Guests are welcomed by our manager in the hotel lounge at 7.00 p.m. The welcome speech is followed by a party at 7.30 p.m.

Day 2 Snowshoeing at 11.00 a.m. Children are invited to join in our kids' ski competition. Beginner's ski race at 3.00 p.m.

Day 3 Skiing excursion with picnic stop. Everyone is invited to the farewell party with live music at 9.00 p.m.

Day 4 Guests are picked up from the hotel by our coach at 10.30 a.m.

After skiing all day, the guests are offered visits to the local health spa every day at 7.00 p.m. so that skiers can relax in natural spring waters. Special treatments such as massage, aromatherapy and mud baths can be booked by appointment only.

Please contact me if you need any further information.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Exercise



You are a resort representative for Sky Holidays, a travel agency in Harbin, China. Write a ski holiday itinerary to promote a ski resort.



Cultural Tips

Dos and Don'ts

Do not extend your hands to elderly visitors and ladies before they extend their hands.

Do not pump the hands of people, hold them too long, use too much force or make the handshake perfunctory. In handshake, do not avoid eye contact.

When you give verbal greetings, try to avoid the following:

You must be tired now.

You have had a hard time.

You have had a tiring journey.

Instead, you may say:

How was the trip? Did you have a pleasant trip?

Welcome, I have been expecting you.

I'm glad to work with you.

Hope that we will have a pleasant trip together.

If elderly tourists decline your help, do not insist. They may prefer independence. They don't like feeling old.

Unit 8

Traditional Chinese Festivals

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to talk about the Dragon Boat Festival and Mid-Autumn Festival
- read the origin of traditional Chinese festivals and their ways of celebration
- write a festival promotion for tourists
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

China is a large country with 56 nationalities. Because of the differences in living environments, history and _____ (1), characteristic festivals are held by the ethnic minorities besides the Spring Festival, and _____ (2) that the *Han* Chinese _____ (3). All these traditional ethnic minority festivals are regarded as indispensable (必不可少的) components of the minorities' customs.

It is estimated that more than _____ (4) of the 1,700 Chinese festivals are ethnic minorities' festivals. Each festival is based on its own origin or _____ (5), and a single festival can also have different origins. Some of these festivals are related to religions and _____ (6), such as the Corban Festival and *Kaizhai* Festival, whereas others are linked to _____ (7) activities, such as the Nadam Fair of Mongolia and the Tibetan New Year.

Some of the ethnic minority festivals are so grand and influential that they attract _____ (8) from far away.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. What's the function of festivals?
2. How many categories of festivals are there in China?
3. Name some traditional festivals.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. The festivities reach their climax before the New Year's Eve and the New Year's Day.
5. Grown-ups occupy themselves with New Year shopping.
6. Children enjoy the New Year entertainment.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: The Dragon Boat Festival

(T— Tourist; G— Guide)

T: I've heard of something about the Dragon Boat Festival, but I don't know what it is.

G: Well, in China on 5 May of the lunar calendar we commemorate *Qu Yuan*, a famous poet and statesman who incurred the displeasure of the emperor and was expelled from the kingdom.

T: What happened then?

G: Some jealous government officials convinced the emperor that he was disloyal and so he was exiled.

T: So what became of him?

G: He became so frustrated that he committed suicide by drowning himself in the *Miluo* river.

T: How pity he was!

T: What do you do in honor of him?

G: On the day of *Qu Yuan's* death, people rushed all over, rowing boats on the river in an attempt to find his remains, hence the origin of the annual boat race.

Notes

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. Dragon Boat Festival | 端午节 |
| 2. commemorate [kə'meməreit] v. | 成为……的纪念 |
| 3. incur [in'kə:] v. | 招惹, 遭受 |
| 4. convince [kən'vins] v. | 说服 |
| 5. exile ['eksail] v. | 流放 |
| 6. frustrate ['frʌstreit] v. | 使失败, 使挫折 |
| 7. commit suicide [kə'mit'sju:ɪsaɪd] | 自杀 |

Dialogue 2: The Mid-Autumn Festival

(T— Tourist; G— Guide)

T: I'm going to take part in 'the Mid-Autumn Festival'. Can you tell us something about it?

G: Sure. The Mid-Autumn Festival for both the *Han* people and minority nationalities. The custom of worshipping the moon can be traced back as far as the ancient *Xia* and *Shang* Dynasties (2000B.C.—1066B.C.). People often send round moon cakes to their relatives as gifts in expression of their best wishes of family reunion.

T: When does the festival celebration begin?

G: The celebration begins on 15 August of the lunar calendar. People will have a family reunion feast in the evening.

T: What activities are held during the festival?

G: When it becomes dark, they look up at the full silver moon or go sightseeing on lakes or drinking wine to celebrate their happy life or thinking of their relatives and friends far from home, and extending all of their best wishes to them.

T: Thank you for your introduction.

G: My pleasure. Hope you'll enjoy the Mid-Autumn Festival tonight.

Notes

1. minority nationality [maɪ'nɔːrɪti,næʃə'nælɪti] 少数民族
2. lunar ['luːnə] *adj.* 阴历的

Professional Practice

The following tips are useful when describing festivals and traditions.

- what the event is called and give translation or explanation

It is known as ... which means ...

- when and where the event takes place

It takes place in ...

It is held in / on / between ...

- what the history / significance of the event is

It signifies / represents / symbolizes / means ...

It commemorates / celebrates the ...

It is associated with ...

- what happens at the event

People decorate floats / let off fireworks / wave flags ...

Exercise



Complete the following dialogues and speak with your partner.

(The tour guide Huang Jun shows the tourists to watch a performance by Chinese Acrobatic Circus.)

(G—guide; T—tourist)

T: What activities are we going to have tonight?

G: _____ 1 _____ (我们将去看中国杂技团表演节目) .

T: That's great!

G: The programs are marvellous, _____ 2 _____ (其中一些节目赢得了多项知名的国际竞赛金奖), such as in France, Hungary, Russia and Italy.

T: What kind of things do they have?

G: All kinds. They have _____ 3 _____ (魔术表演), flying trapeze acts, _____ 4 _____ (走钢丝) and even the clowns. It is a combination of Chinese acrobatic art, Chinese Kungfu, Chinese dance and Chinese music.

T: That's great! I'm eager to go now.

(At the theater.)

T: Look at _____ 5 _____ (空中飞人). They are scary! I am afraid that the acrobats might fell down to the ground.

G: Don't worry about them. _____ 6 _____ (他们都是技术高超的杂技演员), and what's more, they have safety ropes fastened on them.

T: They are doing a very hard and dangerous job. It is really breathtaking.

G: Look at this program. _____ 7 _____ (这个节目很滑稽轻松) .

T: Ah, the clown is doing tightrope walking. _____ 8 _____ (他正在向观众做鬼脸) .

G: Now, look at the girl who is building a pagoda of bowls. This program won a gold medal in the international acrobatic contest in Italy.

T: Oh, this is incredible.

G: _____ 9 _____ (你觉得今晚的节目怎样)?

T: _____ 10 _____ (这些节目很有中国特色). The dance, the music, the costume and the art are so wonderful. This circus gave me a touch of the Chinese culture.

G: I'm glad to hear that.



Part III Reading

Text A Traditional Chinese Festivals

CHINESE NEW YEAR

The most important Chinese holiday is Chinese New Year, which is known in China as Spring

Festival. The festival ushers in the lunar New Year and is the Western Christmas and New Year's Eve rolled into one. From sunrise to sunset, this is a time when the whole country throws itself into celebrating and eating.

No one is quite sure exactly when and where the festival originated. Legend has it that once upon a time, there was a monster called *Nian* (年) that attacked Chinese villages every spring, eating anything that came its way — people, animals, plants and odd buildings. One spring, villagers hung red paper on their doors and threw bamboo on a fire when *Nian* arrived. The monster was so startled by the bright colors and loud crackling noise of the burning bamboo that it turned and fled. Today the word '*nian*' is the Chinese word for year.



Since that day, Chinese people hang red paper signs and lanterns outside their houses and enjoy making loud noises on New Year's Eve. Firecrackers replaced bamboo after gunpowder was invented and the main idea today is the louder and bigger, the better.

In the days leading up to the Spring Festival, every household gets a thorough cleaning since sweeping on New Year's Day itself might sweep away the year's good fortune. Breaking dishes or using sharp objects is

also seen as potentially unlucky.

On New Year's Eve, once the family has been gathered, food becomes a central consideration. Large numbers of delicacies are prepared and fish is often eaten as the Chinese word for fish is a homophone for surplus.

Children particularly enjoy the custom of receiving red envelopes. The envelopes contain gifts of money and are distributed by family elders to young unmarried relatives.

THE LANTERN FESTIVAL

The 15th day of the 1st lunar month is also an important traditional festival in China where various types of lanterns are exhibited. Lanterns are in different shapes and colors. They are made of paper, gauze, silk or plastic in the shapes of fish, frogs, horses, rabbits, roses, lotus flowers, or even gods. Each year's lantern exhibition takes one animal as the theme, the animal which is designated by the Chinese lunar calendar for the year. For example, in the Year of Dragon, the dragon-theme lanterns are seen everywhere. The lantern exhibition is a custom that has persisted throughout history. In recent years, the improvement in living standards has led to various splendid lantern exhibitions all over the country. Such occasions are colorful and present picture-perfect-scenes with the bright moon shining down on hundreds of colorful lanterns. In addition to lantern exhibitions, the Lantern Festival includes plays, firework displays, acrobatics and dances. The dances are always traditional Chinese dances: dragon dances, lion dances, boat dances and lotus dances.

Traditionally, every family eats *yuanxiao* on the night of the Lantern Festival. *Yuanxiao*, a symbol of family unity, affection and happiness, is a glutinous, rice-flour dough stuffed with sweet stuffing such as sugar and bean paste. Therefore, the Lantern Festival is also called the *Yuanxiao* Festival. Apart from *yuanxiao*, people have a grand dinner to mark the end of the Spring Festival celebrations.

THE MID-AUTUMN FESTIVAL

The Mid-Autumn Festival falls on the 15th day of the 8th lunar month because the eighth lunar month is mid-autumn and the fifteenth is the middle of that month. On that night the moon is supposed to be brighter and fuller than any other night. In China, a full moon is symbolic of family reunion, which is why that day is also known as the 'Day of Reunion'.

In ancient China, the moon was considered by scholars as a symbol of brightness, purity, and goodness. Poets of the past wrote many beautiful odes to the moon. Not only was the moon an inspiration to writers but it was also a source of many myths and legends. The most popular myth was a story about a woman named Chang E who flew to the moon and lived in the Moon Palace with trees and flowers around. It is believed that she is now happy about the leisure and tranquility on the moon. But from time to time she is missing the earthly life.

During this festival, people eat the moon cake, which is made of wheat flour and sweet stuffing such as sugar and lotus seed powder. The festival is a time for families to gather to pray and eat fruits in addition to the moon cake. The cake is traditionally cut into pieces that equal the number of people in the family. Watching the moon is an important part of the Mid-Autumn Festival celebrations. At night, people stay out and enjoy the beauty of the full moon, eating the moon cake. Delighted by the serenity and tranquility, some people begin to sing classic songs and recite well-known verses. While tradition abounds during this festival, the essence of this festival is the harmony and happiness of family life, which is something that can be understood by all.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| (1) usher [ˈʌʃə] v. | 预示, 告知 |
| (2) originate [əˈrɪdʒɪneɪt] v. | 起源 |
| (3) legend [ˈledʒənd] n. | 传说 |
| (4) startle [ˈstɑːtl] v. | 使惊吓 |
| (5) crack [kræk] v. | 使发出尖锐声 |
| (6) firecracker [ˈfaɪəkrækə] n. | 鞭炮 |
| (7) fortune [ˈfɔːtʃən] n. | 运气 |
| (8) household [ˈhaʊshəʊd] n. | 家族, 家庭 |
| (9) potentially [pəˈtenʃəli] adv. | 潜在地 |
| (10) migrant [ˈmaɪgrənt] adj. | 移居的 |
| (11) delicacy [ˈdelɪkəsi] n. | 珍馐, 佳肴 |

(12) homophone	['hɒməˌfəʊn]	n.	同音异义字
(13) surplus	['səːpləs]	n.	剩余
(14) distribute	[di'stribjut]	v.	分发
(15) gauze	[ɡəʊz]	n.	透明薄纱
(16) designate	['deizɪneɪt]	v.	指定
(17) stuff	[stʌf]	v.	填塞
(18) stuffing	['stʌfɪŋ]	n.	填塞物
(19) ode	[əʊd]	n.	颂诗
(21) serenity	[si'renɪti]	n.	宁静
(22) abound	[ə'baʊnd]	v.	富于, 充满

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. How do Chinese celebrate Spring Festival?
2. What do people usually eat during the Lantern Festival? Why?
3. When is the Mid-Autumn Festival?
4. List some other traditional festivals in China.

Text B Traditional Festivals in China

Boasting rich cultural meaning and a long history, traditional Chinese festivals compose an important and brilliant part of Chinese culture.

Most traditional festivals took shape during the *Qin* Dynasty (221 B.C.—206 B.C.), the first unified and power-centralized dynasty of China. By the Han Dynasty (206 B.C.—A.D. 220), China had experienced a great development period and major traditional festivals were fixed. In the most prosperous *Tang* Dynasty (A.D. 618—A.D.907), traditional festivals liberated themselves from primitive sacrifice, taboo and mystery and became more entertaining. From then on, festive occasions turned more brisk and exciting and more and more folk customs were developed. Some festivals and customs are still followed today, but others disappeared into the mists of time.

The Dragon Boat Festival

The Dragon Boat Festival, or the *Duanwu* Festival, falls on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month. This Festival is widely accepted as a day to commemorate *Qu Yuan*, China's greatest poet of the Warring States Period (475B.C.—221B.C.). People respected *Qu Yuan* for his efforts to make State of *Chu* strong and prosperous and for his dedication to such ideals. However, he became frustrated with the status quo and ultimately committed suicide by drowning himself in the Miluo River. On the day of *Qu Yuan*'s death, people rushed from all over, rowing boats on the river in an attempt to find his remains, which were thought to have drifted downstream, never to be found. But people never lose their hope. This time every year, rowing a fast stroke, they wanted to be the first to find him. As a result, boat-racing has become very popular along the waterways in many

southern and eastern cities and towns. On the day of the festival, boats are decorated in the shape of a dragon, with a drum and a gong on each boat to set the pace. Sometimes foreign friends would come to compete with the Chinese team in strength, teamwork and rowing skills. As part of the festival, people throw rice-filled bamboo tubes into the river as an offering. During the *Duanwu* Festival, it is also a common practice to eat *zongzi*, which is a rice pudding wrapped up with reed leaves. The reed leaves give a special flavor to the food.

Commemoration of *Qu Yuan* during the *Duanwu* Festival shows his popularity as a poet and man who made great contributions to his motherland. In 1957, *Qu Yuan* was selected by the World Peace Council as one of the four cultural figures to be memorized by the world.

Qingming Festival

Tomb Sweeping Day falls on 4, 5, or 6 April. Its Chinese name '*Qing Ming*' literally means 'Clear Brightness' suggesting its importance as a celebration of Spring. Similar to the spring festivals of other cultures, Tomb Sweeping Day celebrates the rebirth of nature, while marking the beginning of the planting season and other outdoor activities.

The Tomb Sweeping Day is also a day in honor of the past ancestors. Following folk custom, the Chinese believed that the spirits of deceased ancestors looked after the family. Sacrifices of food and spirit money could keep them happy, and the family would prosper through good harvests and more children.

Today, Chinese visit their family graves to tend to any underbrush that has grown. Weeds are pulled, and dirt swept away, and the family will set out offerings of food and spirit money.

Besides the traditions of honoring the dead, people also fly kites on Tomb Sweeping Day. Kites can come in all kinds of shapes, sizes, and colors. Designs could include frogs, dragonflies, butterflies, crabs, bats, and storks.

Double Ninth Festival



The 9th day of the 9th lunar month is the traditional *Chongyang* Festival, or Double Ninth Festival. It usually falls in October in the Gregorian calendar. In an ancient and mysterious book *Yi Jing*, or The Book of Changes, number 6 was thought to be of *Yin* character, meaning feminine or negative, while number 9 was thought to be *Yang*, meaning masculine or positive. So the number nine in both month and day create the Double Ninth Festival, or *Chongyang* Festival. Chong in Chinese means double.

Also, as double ninth was pronounced the same as the word to signify forever, both are *Jiu Jiu*, the Chinese ancestors considered it an auspicious day worth celebration. That's why ancient Chinese began to celebrate this festival long time ago.

The custom of ascending a height to avoid epidemics was passed down long time ago. The height people will reach is usually a mountain or a tower. Ancient literary figures have left many

poems depicting the activity. Even today, people still swarm to mountains on this day.

On this day, people will eat Double Ninth *Gao* (or Cake). In Chinese, *gao* (cake) has the same pronunciation with *gao* (height). People do so just to hope progress in everything they are engaged in.

The Double Ninth Festival is also a time when chrysanthemum blooms. China boasts diversified species of chrysanthemum and people have loved them since ancient times. So enjoying the flourishing chrysanthemum also becomes a key activity on this festival.

In 1989, the Chinese government announced the Double Ninth Festival as Seniors' Day. Since then, autumn trips are organized each year for those retired. At the waterside or on the mountains, the seniors will find themselves merged into nature. Younger generations will bring elder ones to suburban areas or send gifts to them on this day.

Words and Expressions

(1) compose [kəm'pəuz] v.	构成
(2) liberate ['libəreit] v.	解放
(3) primitive ['primitiv] adj.	原始的
(4) sacrifice ['sækrifais] v.	祭祀, 牺牲
(5) entertain [entə'tein] v.	使娱乐
(6) brisk [brisk] adj.	有活力的
(7) commemorate [kə'memə'reit] v.	纪念
(8) Warring States Period	战国时期
(9) status quo ['steitəs kwəu] n.	现状
(10) remains [ri'meinz] n.	残余, 遗物
(11) commemoration [kə.memə'reiʃən] n.	纪念
(12) ancestor ['ænsestə] n.	祖先
(13) deceased [di'si:st] adj.	已死的, 已故的
(14) Gregorian [gri'gɔ:riən] adj.	阳历的、公历的
(15) feminine ['feminin] adj.	阴性的
(16) masculine ['mæskjulin] adj.	阳性的
(17) ascend [ə'send] v.	攀登
(18) depict [di'pikt] v.	表现, 描写
(19) chrysanthemum [kri'sænθəməm] n.	菊, 菊科植物

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. What's the legend related to the Dragon Boat Festival?
2. What's the meaning of *Qingming*?

3. How do people celebrate *Qingming* Festival?
4. What will people eat on Double Ninth Festival and why?



Part IV Writing

Festival Promotion

Festivals are now playing a significant role in tourism development. Research indicates that they are the fastest growing tourist attractions. Some events such as the Spring Festival, or the Lantern Festival are well-established but many Asian and Pacific countries are beginning to take advantage of festivals with good tourism potential. The time is right to examine this field in depth. The following passage is a festival promotion.

Sample

Spring Festival

The Spring Festival is the most well-known of the Chinese festivals: it is celebrated throughout China, as well as in overseas Chinese communities. It's a moveable festival held on 1st day of the 1st lunar month, in other words, around the end of January and the beginning of February. The Festival is a time for family reunion. Right before the festival sets in, people are already busy with grocery shopping, making new clothes, paying tribute to the Kitchen God and ancestors, preparing the family reunion banquet, pasting New Year couplets on gateposts or door panels, and pinning up New Year paintings on walls. During the festival, they visit each other and exchange New Year's greetings. Firecrackers are let off to liven up the atmosphere. A lot of dining and wining take place during the festival, and every family make and eat New Year's cakes (made of glutinous rice flour), dumplings. There are dragon, lion, and yangge dances and lantern shows in both urban and rural areas, as merry-makers bid farewell to the past year and wish for a good beginning in the new year, drive out evil spirits and infection, and pray for good harvests and good luck in the new year.

Exercise



Please make recommendations of traditional Chinese festival as to which we should offer the North American customers. Please summarise why you think the festival is important, when it is held, and why it will attract tourists.



Cultural Tips

(The conversation below takes place between a Greece student called Nick and a Columbian student, Basal.)

(N— Nick; B— Basal)

N: Are you from Columbia?

B: Yes.

N: Tell us about the production of cocaine.

B: Why are you so interested in that?

N: Because I used to take it. I liked it. (*Speaking very quickly and vaguely*)

N: Have you got a sniff of cocaine?

B: No, never!

N: Never? How could you keep it away in that country? (*Then breaking into laughter*)

B: Let me ask you something. Have you tasted cocaine before?

N: Of course I did. I like it.

B: Do you know that when you consume cocaine, while in our country there are people dying for this?

N: Dying?

B: Dying! In fact the fight begins. This might kill two hundred police in one year. These people had kidnapped a lot of people to make the pressure to the government to stop the charge and they kill people. Do you know that this is the thing that media does not comment? Because I was born in Columbia, because I'm Columbian and I am discriminated in so many places. I was discriminated when I arrived at the airport. So I showed my passport because he said I was Columbian. For Columbia, we have to get visa to come to almost every country in Europe. But for people in other countries, they don't need visa, just because we are in the drug problem.

Notes

Perceptions vary among participants in the conversation. Nick, as a Greek, likes to know something about Cocaine-planting and thinks that Basal, a Columbian, must be familiar with it and would like to talk about it. He might consider the topic to be welcome to the Columbian and helpful for improving the mutual understanding between them. However, Basal interprets Nick's purpose in a quite opposite way. He thinks that Nick's question is an insult to him and he doesn't like to be engaged in. Their different interpretation of the purpose of the communication accounts for their respective different reaction. Nick's joke may seem funny to certain other people, but not to Columbian, for they are mere victims of the drug and they are sensitive to the topic.

Follow-up

Using library and people resources, identify a number of fundamental differences between the general American and British cultures.

Question:

What's the effective solution to the communicative barrier?

Unit 9

Tuors of Natural Scenery

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to talk about *Huaqing* Pool and the Three Gorges of the Yangtze River
- read about *Wuyi* Mountains and *Guilin*
- write a resume for your job application to a prospective employer
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Celebrated for its special characteristics of the old town and breathtaking (壮观的) natural scenery, *Lijiang* is so enchanting ____ (1) the 1,000-year small bridges, swift canals, cobbled streets and grey tiled roofs as well as the ____ (2) of the *Naxi* ethnic group. ____ (3) offers a leisurely trip during which you visit Jade Dragon Snow Mountain, Tiger Leaping Gorge, Baisha Village, and a Local *Naxi* Family. Special ____ (4) include an enjoyable *Naxi* music performance and an opportunity to see ____ (5) murals(壁画).

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. Where's the capital of Tibet?
2. What does the word Lhasa mean in Tibetan?
3. Where is the Potala Palace ?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

1. *Shanghai* is on the cutting edge of China's race for modernization.
2. It is an ancient Chinese city with loads of historic temples and ruins to visit.
3. It's both old and young city more akin to Hong Kong than *Beijing*.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: *Huaqing Pool*

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

T: Where is *Huaqing* Pool?

G: *Huaqing* Pool is located at the foot of *Lishan* Mountain, about 35 kilometers east of *Xi'an*.

T: Then when was the pool built?

G: During the *Qin* Dynasty, but the *Li* Palace was built earlier in the *Zhou* Dynasty.

T: Why did *Huaqing* Pool become so well-known?

G: Because of Lady *Yang*, the favorite concubine of Emperor *Xuan Zong* in the *Tang* Dynasty.

T: Is *Huaqing* Pool just a pool?

G: No. *Huaqing* Pool is the name of a scenic park now. It is made up of a group of palaces, several pools and some historical sites where the famous *Xi'an* Incident took place on 12 December 1936.

T: Well, what are the key scenic spots in *Huaqing* Pool?

G: They are the Frost Drifting Hall, the Nine-Dragon Pool, the Marble Boat, the Source of the Hot Springs, Five-room Hall, the Remonstrance Pavilion, and so on.

T: Then in which pool did *Yang* use to take her baths exactly speaking?

G: In the Chinese Flower Crabapple Pool, or in a popular way *Lady Yang's* Pool.

T: I heard the spring water helps to cure the diseases.

G: Yes. With an even temperature of 43 degree (109 F), the ever-flowing water of the hot spring contains minerals and organic materials that have therapeutic effects on the skin.

Notes

- | | |
|---|--------|
| 1. incident ['ɪnsɪdənt] <i>n.</i> | 偶发事件 |
| 2. remonstrance [ˌrɪːmə'n'streɪʃən] <i>n.</i> | 抗议, 规劝 |
| 3. mineral ['mɪnərəl] <i>n.</i> | 矿物质 |
| 4. Therapeutic [θə'reʊ•pjuːtɪk] <i>adj.</i> | 治疗上的 |

Dialogue 2: The Three Gorges of the Yangtze River

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

T: What's the scenery like on the Three Gorges cruise?

G: Well, to sail through the famous Three Gorges of the Yangtze is to feel the power, majesty and timelessness of China's greatest and the third longest river of the world. Imagine the sight as sheer cliffs of rock close in around you, drawing you deeply into a scene of almost unspeakable beauty. Fishermen brave the rushing waters to net their livelihood, and birds dart between clouds, eyeing their prey far below. As the boat turns at a seemingly dead end, a new world of wonders suddenly unfolds before you.

T: Sounds amazing! I think I'd like some information about cruise on the Three Gorges.

G: Sure. They are *Qutang*, *Wu* and *Xiling* Gorges, extending from *Baidi* Temple in *Fengjie* County of *Sichuan* Province to *Nanjing* Pass near *Yichang* City of *Hubei* Province.

T: How wide are the Gorges?

G: The Gorges vary from 300 meters at their widest to less than 100 meters at their narrowest.

T: What are the famous attractions on the cruise?

G: Well, quite a lot. In *Qutang* Gorge we will see ancient coffins hung in the cliffside caves. The *Wu* Gorge features 12 graceful peaks.

T: I heard the new Three Gorges Dam is being built, then what changes will the new reservoir bring to the Three Gorges?

G: We Chinese will realize the dream of taming the Yangtze for power generation and flood control.

T: How long will it take for the whole tour?

G: Three days for only the Three Gorges while five days or so from *Chongqing* to *Wuhan*.

Notes

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----|--------|
| 1. gorge [gɔ:dʒ] | n. | 小峡谷 |
| 2. cruise ['kru:z] | n. | 航行游览 |
| 3. Three Gorges | | 三峡 |
| 4. dart [dɑ:t] | vi. | 飞出, 突进 |
| 5. unfold [ʌn'fəuld] | v. | 展开, 打开 |
| 6. coffin ['kɒfin] | n. | 棺材, 灵柩 |

Professional Practice

The following tips are useful when giving presentation.

● introduction

Good evening, everyone.

Thank you for inviting me to speak on ...

Tonight I am going to talk about ...

● introducing your talk

I would like to start by ...

I shall begin by ...

Then I will speak about ...

Thirdly I will talk about ...

And lastly ...

● the main part of the talk

Let us begin with ...

However ...

As far as (the accommodation) is concerned ...

Moving on to ...

My third point deals with ...

And last but not least ...

● summing up / conclusion

So, in conclusion, you can see that ...

To summarize, I think that ...

● saying thank you and ending your talk

Thank you all for listening so attentively.

I hope I have been able to tell you a little about ...

Before I sit down I would first like to thank ... for ...

● be prepared to answer questions about the project

Does anyone have any questions?

Would you like to ask questions?

That's a good question. I think ...

Exercise



Complete the following dialogue and speak with your partner.

(A tour group is climbing Mountain Huang.)

(G—Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Look, that is _____ 1 _____ (迎客松). You see, it has stretched its branches to welcome us.

T: The pine looks exotic, growing out of a gap of a cliff with its branches stretching out.

G: Exotic pines are 'a wonder' of Mountain Hang The other wonders are _____ 2 _____ (怪石、

云海和温泉)。They are the ‘four wonders’ of Mountain *Huang*.

T: What’s that peak called?

G: _____ 3 _____ (莲花峰)。

T: Ah, it really looks like a lotus and a newly burst blossom blooming toward the sky.

T: Is this peak the highest one of Mountain *Huang*?

G: Yes, it is. Mountain *Huang* has three main peaks. The other two are _____ 4 _____ (天都峰和光明顶)。

T: There are so many great attractions on Mountain *Huang*!

G: *Xu Xiake*, a famous geologist and traveler of *Ming* Dynasty, once praised Mountain *Huang* beauty like this: ‘After seeing the five famous mountains in China, others are nothing; _____ 5 _____ (黄山归来不看岳)’。

T: So we won’t be interested in any other mountains. I’m a little tired, may we take a rest here?

G: _____ 6 _____ (当然可以)。



Part III Reading

Text A A Visit to *Wuyi* Mountains

The Scenic Area of *wuyi* Mountain is located in northern *Fujian* Province, on China’s southeastern coast. It is a typical *Danxia* landform, situated on the southwestern slope of the northern section of the *Wuyi* Mountains. Its main attractions are the Nine-bend Stream and 36 peaks. The stream flows down the mountain in a zigzag way, and the 36 peaks are all of red sandstone. The highest peak is *Dawang*, standing at the mouth of the Nine-bend Stream, and there are also the Goddess Peak and Fishing Terrace, with their reflections on the surface of the stream forming a contrast of green water and red mountains.

With a humid and warm climate, the *Wuyi* Mountains are rich in flora and fauna, including several thousand subtropical plant species, rare flowers and trees as well as precious animals.

In the past 2,000 years, famous figures such as emperors, officials and men of letters etc. have come to the mountains to worship, tour or give lectures, leaving 300 historical sites, such as temples, academies, pavilions and towers. At the foot of the mountains, there are remains of a *Han* Dynasty city and kilns of the *Song* Dynasty. On the 36 peaks, there are more than 700 places carved with inscriptions.

Tourists can ride a bamboo raft to enjoy the picturesque landscape along the Nine-bend Stream, as reflected in the ancient lines: ‘The landscape of the *Wuyi* Mountains is marvelous; it is a fairyland in the human world.’ Relaxation is guaranteed from a tour of this unpolluted land with blue sky, clear water and fresh air.

The *Wuyi* Mountains are outstanding for their combination of natural and man-made sights, serving as one of the precious natural and cultural heritage sites not only in China but also in the

world. *Wuyi*'s historical sites include hanging coffins 3,800 years ago, the remains of the city of King *Minyue* of the Western *Han* Dynasty, and 187 temples of Taoist, Buddhist and Confucian schools, as well as more than 400 sites of cliff inscriptions of poems left by men of letters since the Northern and Southern Dynasties.

The area of the *Wuyi* Mountains is also one of the places in south China rich in biological resources, with more than 3,000 plant species, including more than 1,000 tree species. Moreover, *Wuyi* Rock Tea, one of the two famous tea categories of *Fujian*, is produced here. Entering the *Wuyi* Mountains, one finds himself in a world of tea. The *Wuyi* peaks, shrouded with clouds and mists, only get short period of time in the sunshine, and the soil and water are unpolluted. All these guarantee the quality of Rock Tea. There are more than 100 varieties, and *Dahongpao* (Red Robe) is the best known among them. *Dahongpao* Tea grows in *Jiulongge* near *Tianxin* Rock. Its output is minimal. For the convenience of tourists, the *Wuyishan* Scenic Area Administration has made *Jiulongge* a tourist spot. Tourists can take a bus to the entrance of Mountains.

At every resting-place in the scenic area, Rock Tea is available to tourists. A pot of tea is priced differently according to its variety. Sitting on a bamboo stool by a bamboo table in the *Wuyi* Mountains and sipping Rock Tea one feels a pleasant sense of relaxation. To have a better understanding of *Wuyi* Rock Tea, the scenic area has preserved several tea processing workshops. Tourists can see various procedures of tea processing and also try their hands to experience how tea is processed. In addition, the local people demonstrate tea-serving ceremonies and give performance to promote the local tea culture.

Tourists will find that a tour to the *Wuyi* Mountains is worthwhile.

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------|
| (1) landform ['ləndfɔ:m] n. | 地形 |
| (2) slope [sləʊp] n./v. | 坡度, 倾斜 |
| (3) zigzag ['zɪgzæg] adj. | 锯齿形的 |
| (4) sandstone ['sændstəʊn] n. | 砂岩 |
| (5) terrace ['terəs] n. | 平台, 露台 |
| (6) humid ['hju:mɪd] adj. | 湿的 |
| (7) flora ['flɔ:rə] n. | 植物群 |
| (8) subtropical ['sʌb'trɒpɪkəl] adj. | 亚热带的 |
| (9) fauna ['fəʊnə] n. | 动物群 |
| (10) species ['spi:ʃi:z] n. | 种类 |
| (11) academy [ə'kædəmɪ] n. | 学院, 研究院 |
| (12) kiln [kɪln] n. | 窑 |
| (13) inscription [ɪn'skrɪpʃən] n. | 铭文, 题字 |
| (14) raft [rɑ:ft] n. | 木筏, 木排 |
| (15) picturesque ['pɪktʃə'resk] adj. | 别致的, 如画的 |
| (16) landscape ['lændskeɪp] n. | 风景 |
| (17) biological [baɪə'lɒdʒɪkəl] adj. | 生物学的 |

(18) Taoist ['tauist] <i>n.</i>	道家, 道教徒
(19) Confucian [kən'fju:ʃiən] <i>adj.</i>	儒家的, 孔子的
(20) cliff [klif] <i>n.</i>	悬崖, 峭壁
(21) shroud [ʃraud] <i>v.</i>	覆盖, 掩蔽
(22) minimal ['miniməl] <i>adj.</i>	最小的, 最低限度的
(23) sip [sip] <i>v.</i>	吮吸, 呷
(24) procedure [prə'si:dʒə] <i>n.</i>	过程, 步骤
(25) be situated	位于……
(26) serve as	充当, 担任
(27) be rich in	盛产……, 充满……
(28) for the convenience of	为了……的方便
(29) have an understanding of	懂得……, 理解……
(30) in addition (to)	此外, 除……以外

Notes

1. Its main attractions are the Nine-bend Stream and 36 peaks. 它的主要景点是九曲溪和三十六峰。

2. The landscape of the *Wuyi Mountains* is marvelous; it is a fairyland in the human world. 武夷山的风景令人赞叹不已; 这里堪称是人间仙境。

3. The area of the *Wuyi Mountains* is also one of the places in south China rich in biological resources ... 武夷山地区也是在华南拥有大量生物资源的地方之一……

4. shrouded with clouds and mists: 云雾缭绕的

5. one feels a pleasant sense of relaxation: 人人都有一种愉快的轻松感

6. Tourists will find that a tour to the *Wuyi Mountains* is worthwhile. 旅游者将会发现到武夷山一游是值得的。

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. Would you please describe the beautiful scenery there in the *Wuyi Mountains*?
2. Why did the ancient lines say, 'The landscape of the *Wuyi Mountains* is marvelous; it is a fairyland in the human world'?
3. For what reasons are the *Wuyi Mountains* famous?
4. What makes the quality of Rock Tea become well-known?
5. How do the local people promote their tea culture?

Text B *Guilin*

‘I have visited more than 80 countries and over 100 cities. I have found that no city can surpass the beauty of *Guilin*. *Guilin* is really a bright pearl in China.’

—by former U.S. President
Richard Nixon

‘No place in China is more evocative of the beauty of your country than *Guilin*.’

- by former U.S. President Bill Clinton

10 Reasons to Visit *Guilin*

- An absolutely legendary scenic Mecca, *Guilin* has the most typical karst topography in the world, with verdant hills, limpid waters, mysterious caves and grotesque rocks.
- Take the **Li River Cruise** from Guilin to Yangshuo and enjoy the fresh feeling of walking in a Chinese ink landscape painting.
- Pedal lazily through the rice paddies, fruit orchards, tranquil villages and extraordinary karst peaks of **Yangshuo**.
- Simply relax yourself in one of the bars or cafes at the nationally renowned **Yangshuo West Street** to enjoy the peaceful atmosphere.
- Watch the stunning ‘**Impression-Liu Sanjie**’ — China’s largest outdoor performance on a natural stage setting formed by the *Li* River and 12 peaks.
- Enjoy a casual stroll through the city area, taste the famous **Guilin rice noodles**, and take the ‘**Two Rivers and Four Lakes**’ water tour around the city at night.
- Explore the peak-dotted riverine parks and marvel at Mother Nature’s masterpieces, such as the **Elephant Trunk Hill**, the **Camel Hill**.
- Go through spectacular karst caves, such as the **Reed Flute Cave**, and learn how the fantastic stalactites were formed.
- Take an excursion to the spectacular **Dragon’s Backbone Rice Terraces** in *Longsheng* County and sleep in the *Zhuang* village of *Ping’an*.
- Hike around the mountain areas dotted with colourful **ethnic minority tribes** such as *Zhuang*, *Miao*, *Yao* and *Dong*.

Words and Expressions

(1) karst [kɑːst] *n.*

喀斯特地形

(2) topography [təˈpɒɡrəfi] *n.*

地形学，地势

(3) verdant [ˈvɜːdənt] *adj.*

绿的，青葱的

(4) limpid [ˈlɪmpɪd] *adj.*

透明的，清澈的

(5) grotesque [ɡrəʊˈtesk] *adj.*

奇形怪状的

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|------|--------|
| (6) orchard | ['ɔ:tʃəd] | n. | 果园 |
| (7) renowned | [ri'naund] | adj. | 著名的 |
| (8) stroll | [strəul] | vi. | 闲逛, 漫步 |
| (9) excursion | [eks'kə:ʃən] | n. | 游览, 远足 |
| (10) minority | [mai'nɔ:rɪti] | n. | 少数 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. What's Richard Nixon's comment on *Guilin*?
2. What's Bill Clinton's comment on *Guilin*?
3. Name some famous hills mentioned in the text.
4. Name some famous karst caves in *Guilin* mentioned in the text.



Part IV Writing

How to Write a Resume

A resume is a concise business-style report that displays your job qualifications to a prospective employer. Typically, information is grouped under the six headings as shown in the following sample.

1. **Heading:** Include your name, address, telephone, E-mail address, and date of birth.
2. **Employment Objective:** State your immediate work goal and the direction you hope your career will take.
3. **Education:** List relevant facts of your college education. Note any academic honors such as a scholarship.
4. **Employment Experience:** Highlight your full-time, part-time, volunteer, and summer work experience. Mention any promotions or raises you've received.
5. **Professional Interests:** Cite membership in professional organizations. In addition, note any special skills such as training in lifesaving or fluency in a foreign language.
6. **References:** People often write references available on request.

Below are some more tips:

1. Capitalize the headings to make them stand out on the page.
2. To condense information, use phrases and clauses rather than complete sentences.
3. List your most recent education and employment experience first and then work backward so the employer can quickly figure out what you've done recently.
4. Don't try to cram too much material onto a page. Ample white space is important.

Resume

Karen K . Auernhamer
 1407 East Elm Street
 Telephone: (231)796-7791
 E-mail: Auernh@aol.com
 Date of birth: 13/5/1978
 Place of birth : New York, USA
 Nationality: American

Objective

To obtain a full-time position as a tourist representative on a cruise liner that offers experience in a high standard of customer care.

Education and qualifications

1998: Leisure and Tourism Diploma, Long Island State University

Employment history

1999 to present date: cocktail waiter, Marco Polo Hotel, New York. USA

1998: Ski instructor, Sky Youth Club, New York

1996 to 1998: bar waiter (weekends only), New York.

Additional information

Active member of a University Basketball team. Excellent computing skills.

References

Available on request.



Cultural Tips

Fruitful Interview

The coming early summer is again the time when college students are busy with job interviews in the hope that three or four years of high priced education was not in vain.

A job hunter can have the best credentials(文凭)in the world and still fail the job interview. If that happens, his dreams of employment are shattered at least with one employer. Some of the questions seem harmless enough. Actually, they are tricks designed to bring out your weaknesses and strengths.

‘Tell me about your life’ is almost always asked. It is a trap for ramblers (不着边际闲聊的人). The interviewer wants to see how quickly you organize your thoughts and how well you communicate. Someone who rambles a lot is on shaky ground.

Your answer also provides a glimpse of your character and interest. Morsier recalled an episode about a lawyer being interviewed for trial work with a large firm. ‘She talked about a

skiing medal she had won. It showed she liked to win.’ So she was given the position.

Another question that usually catches people off guard (不提防): What is your weakness?

It’s the most difficult question. One should always try to present a weakness in a positive light. You might say: ‘One of my problems is that I’m a perfectionist. It interferes with my personal life because I’m always taking work home.’

Perhaps the most dangerous booby trap (陷阱) is the inquiry: What do you think of your former boss or company?

‘Never bad-mouth anyone’, advises Morsier. If you were fired, try to owe it to personality conflicts rather than to some other people. But always stress that the conflicts didn’t prevent you from doing your job well.

Be more careful about the presentation of your former boss. It might be noted that ‘he helped me learn specific skills’ or ‘he was under a lot of pressures’. You might add, ‘But I would have handled it differently and shown more compassion to the employees’.

Unit 10

Entertainment

In this unit, you will

- learn the various types of health and recreation facilities.
- read what a tea ceremony is and its spirit.
- write a notice.
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject.



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

In China, a massage isn't an indulgence(嗜好); it's what the doctor orders. According to the principle of traditional _____ (1), massage can help the body's *qi*, or energy, flow freely and _____ (2). Of course, where you choose to have your massage can tip the scale toward indulgence. Around Shanghai are hundreds of blind massage parlors(按摩院), inexpensive (3) _____ whose blind masseurs treat your body's soft and _____ (4) spots. At the other end of the range lie the hotel spas, luxurious retreats (静修) where indulgence is respectable. Here are just a few of the massage _____ (5) in *Shanghai* that can attend to your needs.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

1. Chinese opera is an important part of Chinese culture.
2. The costumes and performance of Chinese opera are fantastic.
3. The most well known form of Chinese opera is *Yueju* Opera.
4. In *Shanghai*, *Beijing* Opera is very popular.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

5. Which city is the first to visit in China?
6. What could you explore in *Beijing*?
7. What will you see in historical city *Xi'an*?



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: Talking about the Recreation and Fitness Center

(The tour Guide *Liu Mei* tells Paul some information about the Recreation and Fitness Center of the hotel.)

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Anything particular you'd like to do this evening?

T: I don't know. Is there anything special in the hotel?

G: Sure. There is a musical fountain performance in the night club near the lobby. People can enjoy the beautiful fountains while listening to the wonderful music.

T: Mm, sounds interesting.

G: There are various computer games in the Recreation Center.

T: And do they have a Fitness Center here?

G: Yes, they have one. It's on the second floor.

T: What service do they have, may I ask?

G: Massage and sauna. Apart from that, they also have facilities like a very big swimming pool, a gym, a billiards room, a bowling room...

T: That's great! Bowling is my favorite. I must go and enjoy myself. Is it open now?

G: It's 19:10. Yes, it's open now.

T: Super! Thank you for your information, and bye-bye.

Notes

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------|
| 1. musical fountain performance | 音乐喷泉表演 |
| 2. Fitness Center | 健身中心 |

Dialogue 2: Booking Tickets for *Beijing* Opera

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Good evening, Mrs Parker, thinking of doing anything interesting?

T: My friends and I would like to go to a *Beijing* Opera. Which theater would you recommend?

G: How about the Capital Theater?

T: What's on this evening?

G: 'Butterfly Lovers.' Would you like to go?

T: Yes. Can you get me some tickets?

G: How many tickets would you like to have?

T: Three.

G: One moment, please. Let me contact them for you...I'm sorry, there aren't any tickets left for this evening. Is tomorrow evening all right?

T: Tomorrow evening will also be fine.

G: Please pick up the tickets here tomorrow afternoon at your convenience.

T: Thank you very much.

Notes

- | | |
|------------------------|---------|
| 1. the Capital Theater | 首都剧院 |
| 2. pick up the tickets | 取票 |
| 3. at your convenience | 在你方便的时候 |

Professional Practice

Agreeing or disagreeing

1. We often show agreement by repeating an idea or adding a supporting idea.

You're right. It is expensive.

Yes, I agree. We should charge them more.

That sounds like a good idea. If we do that we'll get more bookings.

2. When disagreeing it is important to soften the impact by:

- Using expressions such as

I'm sorry but...

I'm afraid...

- Acknowledging the value of the speaker's idea

That's a good idea but...

That might be possible but...

- giving a reason for disagreeing

It's a good idea but it'd be very expensive.

Exercise



Complete the following dialogue and speak with your partner.

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

T: Hi, I don't want to go out this evening. Instead I will go swimming. Could you tell me where the swimming pool is?

G: _____ 1 _____ (碰巧我也要去那). I'd like to show you the way.

T: It is very nice. Do you like swimming?

G: Yes. _____ 2 _____ (我认为旅行中游泳也是一种休闲).

(At the entrance)

T: Excuse me. I bring the swimming suit but forget the towel and the soap for the shower after it.

- G: Take it easy. _____ 3 _____ (毛巾和肥皂他们是不收费的) .
- T: Ok, that's good.
- G: They say _____ 4 _____ (今天泳池的温度在 22°左右) . It is quite good for swimming.
- T: Yes. I think so. The water seems very nice and sanitary.
- G: As routine work, _____ 5 _____ (他们每隔一天都把室内游泳馆的水换掉) . But I'm afraid that we should do some exercise before we dive into it.
- T: That's right. Let's begin.



Part III Reading

Text A The Tea Ceremony



Tea was first imported from China in the 8th century and over the course of time developed into the art of *Chado* or the Way of Tea. It was Sen no Rikyu(1522—1591), the greatest 16th century tea master who identified the spirit of the Way of Tea with its four basic principles of harmony, respect, purity and tranquility. Through tea, recognition is given that every human encounter is a unique occasion that can, and will, never recur again exactly. Thus every aspect of tea must be savoured for what it gives the participants.

THE WAY OF TEA

The tea ceremony is a well-orchestrated series of events. It takes place in a *chashitsu*, which is a building or a room in which the ceremony is performed. The ritual involves meeting the guests, a purification with fresh water in a stone basin, walking through the ground of the teahouse, watching the tea being prepared, consuming food and drinking the tea.

Together, the *chashitsu*, *roji*(tea garden), and *mizuya*(preparation room) should provide the best physical and spiritual setting for expressing this hospitality. There is also a religious dimension associated with *Zen* Buddhism ideals. The whole universe is experienced in the drinking of a bowl of tea by giving oneself over totally to the here and now and fully participating with a heart free from selfish desires.

The ceremony is like a play consisting of two acts and an intermission. In the *shoza*, or first act, the guests enter the *chashitsu* and are served a light meal. After this, the guests retire to the garden for a short break, 'the intermission', and wait for the host to call them back. The second act

is called the goza. First the host prepares matcha(thick tea) for the guests. He then prepares the charcoal a second time and makes usucha(thin tea). When all of that is finished, the host and the guests silently and respectfully bow to each other one last time, and the guests take their leave.

Words and Expressions

(1) encounter [in'kauntə]	v.	遭逢，邂逅
(2) savour ['seivə]	v.	欣赏，品味
(3) ritual ['ritʃuəl]	n. & adj.	仪式 (的)
(4) purification [ˌpjʊrifi'keɪʃən]	n.	洗净，洗涤，净化
(5) dimension [di'menʃən]	n.	方面，侧面
(6) orchestrate ['ɔ:kɪstreɪt]	v.	精心安排，编管弦乐曲
(7) act [ækt]	n.	(戏剧的) 一幕
(8) intermission [ɪntə'mɪʃən]	n.	中止，休息
(9) charcoal ['tʃɑ:kəʊl]	n.	木炭

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

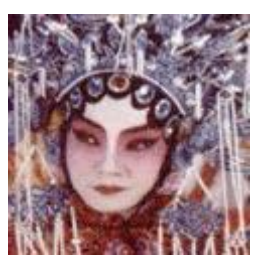
- 1. What is the purpose of the ceremony?
- 2. What does the ceremony involve?
- 3. In what way is it a religious ceremony?
- 4. What beliefs does the ceremony represent?

Text B Traditional Chinese Opera

Chinese Opera has a history dating about 2,000 years. There are 317 types of Opera, of which Peking Opera is the most important and very well-known.

The practitioner of Peking Opera is a master athlete—he must be in top physical shape to accommodate the rigors of this performance art. Most performers begin their training from childhood.

Performers wear extensive makeup; their whole faces are painted in bright colors. Colorful masks, inspired from ancient ceremonies and religious symbols, are done by the actors. The color of each character’s face is significant as it represents the character’s personality and fate. Understanding the colors will greatly enhance your enjoyment of the opera as it is an intricate part of the story. Red faces represent righteousness; black denotes gallantry and heroism; blue and green signify brawn (not necessarily with brains) or those held in high regard by commoners; yellow and white are negative colors, often meaning cunning or a tendency to be suspicious; gold denotes deities and silver is reserved for demons or bad spirits. The make-up style indicates whether a character is good or evil.



Words and Expressions

(1) practitioner [præk'tɪʃənə] <i>n.</i>	习艺者, 从业者
(2) accommodate [ə'kɒmədeɪt] <i>v.</i>	使适应
(3) rigor ['rɪɡə] <i>n.</i>	严格, 严酷, 严重
(4) makeup ['meɪkʌp] <i>n.</i>	化妆品, 扮相
(5) inspire [ɪn'spaɪə] <i>v.</i>	给予灵感, 鼓舞
(6) enhance [ɪn'hɑ:ns] <i>v.</i>	提高, 加强
(7) intricate ['ɪntrɪkɪt] <i>adj.</i>	错综复杂的, 难了解的
(8) righteousness ['raɪtʃəsnɪs] <i>n.</i>	公正, 正义
(9) denote [dɪ'neʊt] <i>v.</i>	指示, 意味
(10) gallantry ['gæləntri] <i>n.</i>	勇气, 勇敢
(11) heroism ['hɪərəʊɪzm] <i>n.</i>	英雄主义
(12) signify ['sɪnɪfaɪ] <i>v.</i>	表示, 意味
(13) brawn [brɔ:n] <i>n.</i>	强壮的肌肉, 强健的体力
(14) cunning ['kʌnɪŋ] <i>n. & adj.</i>	狡猾 (的)
(15) suspicious [sə'spɪʃəs] <i>adj.</i>	多疑的, 怀疑的
(16) deity ['di:ɪti] <i>n.</i>	神, 神位, 神性
(17) demon ['di:mən] <i>n.</i>	恶魔, 鬼

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. How long is the history of Chinese Opera?
2. What's the meaning of the different color of each character's face in Peking Opera?
3. How to identify whether a character is good or evil?



Part IV Writing

Notice

In the western countries whether in cities or towns, some services may be given both to a tourist and a local citizen.

Any first-class health center can provide suitable facilities. Here, at the Health Center, tourists are given a medically sound and highly personalized experience. However, some emergencies may occur when you need to put up a notice. A format of notice is simple including the time, place, people related and the announcer. The following is a notice from a health club.

Notice

Our swimming pool will be closed for renovation from 6 January to 31 January. It will re-open on 1 February to 4 February. Our staff will be able to arrange access for guests to use the Carlton Club Pool. Health club fee of RMB50 per person per day will be billed back to guests of this club.

Ivy Health Club

2 January, 2008

Exercise



Please write a short notice. You should cover the following points.

1. Our swimming pool will be closed for the coming of rain season from 1 Mar. to 1 Apr.
2. Our guests may use indoor swimming pool instead.
3. Your apologies.



Cultural Tips

History of Massage

Massage may be the oldest and simplest form of medical care. Egyptian tomb paintings show people being massaged. In Eastern cultures, massage has been practiced continually since ancient times. A Chinese book from 2,700 B.C., *The Yellow Emperor's Classic of Internal Medicine*, recommends 'breathing exercises, massage of skin and flesh, and exercises of hands and feet' as the appropriate treatment for 'complete paralysis, chills, and fever.' It was one of the principal method of relieving pain for Greek and Roman physicians. Julius Caesar was said to have been given a daily massage to treat neuralgia (神经痛). 'The physician must be experienced in many things,' wrote Hippocrates, the father of Western medicine, in 5 B.C., 'but assuredly in rubbing... for rubbing can bind a joint that is too loose, and loosen a joint that is too rigid.'

Doctors such as Ambroise Pare, a 16th century physician to the French court, praised massage as a treatment for various ailments. Swedish massage, the method most familiar to Westerners, was developed in the 19th century by a Swedish doctor, poet, and educator named Per Henrik Ling. His system was based on a study of gymnastics and physiology, and on techniques borrowed from China, Egypt, Greece, and Rome. Physiotherapy, originally based on Ling's methods, was established with the foundation in 1894 of the Society of Trained Masseurs. During WWI patients suffering from nerve injury or shell shock were treated with massage. St. Thomas's Hospital,

London, had a department of massage until 1934. However, later breakthroughs in medical technology and pharmacology eclipsed massage as physiotherapists began increasingly to favor electrical instruments over manual methods of stimulating the tissues.

Massage lost some of its value and prestige with the unsavory image created by ‘massage parlors’. This image is fading as awareness of the value and therapeutic properties of massage grow.

Massage is now used in intensive care units, for children, elderly people, babies in incubators (保温箱), and patients with cancer, AIDS, heart attacks, or strokes. Most American hospices have some kind of bodywork therapy available, and it is frequently offered in health centers, drug treatment clinics, and pain clinics.

A variety of massage techniques have also been incorporated into several other complementary therapies, such as aromatherapy (香薰疗法), reflexology (反射疗法), rolfing (罗尔夫按摩术) and osteopathy (整骨术).

Unit 11

Shopping

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to describe your preference
- read about China—shoppers' paradise
- write about Chinese folk arts
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

There are many exotic and unusual things to buy in China which make wonderful souvenirs and gifts for _____ (1) and friends back home. The following is a sample of the amazing range of _____ (2).

Silk: Chinese silk is famous all over the world for its magnificent quality, color and _____ (3). Silk products from *Hangzhou* and *Suzhou* are particularly good.

Tea: There are hundreds of varieties of Chinese tea. They can be classified into _____ (4) — green tea, black tea, brick tea, scented tea, and oolong tea.

Antiques: If you're an antique enthusiast (爱好者), China is the place for you! Fascinating antique shops and markets are to _____ (5) in most cities and towns. A word of _____ (6): when buying expensive items, ensure that the item carries the official _____ (7) of the shop and the sale documents are in order. Chinese law forbids the export of antiques dated earlier than _____ (8).

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. What makes ideal souvenirs and gifts?
2. What are the 'four treasures of study'?
3. What are the best writing materials?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

4. What does Hong Kong look like on the surface?
5. What gives the city an exotic flavor?



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: Shopping for Traditional Chinese Paintings

(C—Clerk; T—Tourist)

C: What can I do for you?

T: I'm just looking right now. Thank you.

(Five minutes later.)

T: May I see this painting?

C: Yes, certainly. It's done by Mr Pan Tianshou, a most prominent painter in modern China. Mr Pan used to teach in the Fine Arts Academy of this province. He was its president and also one time vice president of China Artists' Association.

T: Is this his original work or just a reproduction?

C: It's a reproduction.

T: The painting is excellent. I've been looking for such a painting ever since I came to China. But the wrinkles up there—don't they look ugly?

C: Yes, they do. But they are not as important as the painting.

T: Can you remount it. I won't be able to remount it when I get home.

C: It'll take 3 days at least. Are you going to stay that long?

T: No, I'm not. In fact, I'm leaving this afternoon.

C: Then there's very little we can do to help. I'm sorry about it.

T: Can you give me a discount?

C: Er—I'll have to consult my boss.

T: Go and ask, please.

(Five minutes later.)

C: Okay, we'll sell it at 1300 yuan, a discount by 200 yuan.

T: All right, I'll take it. Be sure to pack it well, please.

C: Certainly.

Notes

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| 1. Mr <i>Pan Tianshou</i> | 潘天寿先生 |
| 2. the Fine Arts Academy | 美术学院 |
| 3. China Artists' Association | 中国艺术家协会 |
| 4. Remount [<i>•ri•maunt</i>] v. | 重新装裱 |

Dialogue 2: At the Souvenir Department

(A—Shop Assistant ; T—Tourist)

A: Good morning, Madam. May I help you?

T: I'm just looking right now, thank you. Oh, may I see some cloisonne vases?

A: Sure. Over there.

T: You seem to have quite a range here!

A: Yes. As a matter of fact, we are the biggest dealers in cloisonne in this area. Everyday, we get hundreds of tourists coming in for different sizes.

T: Please show me that one on the second shelf.

A: Here you are. This one is bright-colored from Beijing.

T: I would like a medium-sized vase, and preferably something with a light blue background.

A: How about this one? The background is pale blue with Chinese traditional paintings of flowers and birds.

T: It seems to me that the Chinese paint flowers and birds everywhere.

A: In a way, the Chinese are naturalists, and flowers and birds are the most favorite subjects.

T: Oh, this one is nice. I love it. It is typical Chinese, I guess. How much does it cost?

A: Two hundred and sixty yuan.

T: All right. I'll take it.

A: Will you pay at the cashier's over there, please?

T: All right. By the way, what do you accept here? Cash or check?

A: We accept cash, credit cards, cheque, and traveller's cheque.

Notes

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. cloisonne [<i>klwa'zɔnei</i>] vase | 景泰蓝花瓶 |
| 2. We accept cash, credit cards, cheque, and traveller's cheque. | 现金、信用卡、支票、旅行支票都可以使用。 |

Professional Practice

When shopping, the following expressions are useful:

Where can I buy...?

Where's the nearest...? (bank, bookstore, camera store, department store, market, music store, newsstand, pharmacy, shopping center, supermarket, travel agency)

I'd like to buy...

I'd like to see it.

Do you have any others?

I want something of better quality.

I want something like this.

No, thanks!

Can you show me another one?

I'll take it.

Please wrap it up for me.

How much does this cost?

Can you write down the price?

Can I pay by credit card?

Do you accept US dollars?

Can I try this on?

Where's the dressing room?

It's too...(big, small, long, short)

I want ... color: (black, red)

Exercise



Complete the following dialogue and speak with your partner.

(S— Salesman; T— Tourist)

S: Good evening. What can I do for you?

T: I'd like to buy some famous Chinese handicrafts. _____ 1 _____ (你有什么建议)?

S: There are various kinds of such articles in our shop, for example, porcelain, embroidery, cloisonne, wood engraving, and writing brush. _____ 2 _____ (我带您看看好吗)?

T: Is it for making tea?

S: Yes. _____ 3 _____ (这是景德镇茶具). This set is unusual. There are few others like it.

T: *Jingdezhen*? It's called 'the capital of porcelain', isn't it?

S: Yes, it is.

T: I'll buy one China tea set, one tri-colored pottery, one Chinese painting with Chinese calligraphy, and three Chinese embroidery shirts. How much do they take together?

S: Altogether 820 yuan. _____ 4 _____ (我给您包上吧).

T: That's fine. Here is 900 yuan.

S: _____ 5 _____ (这是找您的零钱和收据) .

T: Thank you.

S: Thank you for shopping.



Part III Reading

Text A Creating a Shoppers' Paradise

Millions of foreigners and overseas Chinese visit China every year on business, for sightseeing or exchanges in the fields of economy, trade, sports, science, and culture. Many of them return home loaded with souvenirs and gifts. In fact, there cannot be many people who could manage to stay in China and not be tempted to do any shopping. China offers a dazzling range of goods from antiques, jewelry, Chinese paintings and calligraphy to chopsticks, garments, foods, Chinese patent medicines and tonics, to name just a few. In fact, shops are becoming one of the pillars that support China's hotel industry. They have been adding much to the convenience and pleasure of guests and to the financial success of the industry.

Arts and crafts are the main products of a souvenir store, which have become the favorite goods as well as eye-openers to foreign and domestic buyers. The jade carving is characterized by its distinct national style of simplicity, gracefulness and delicate lucidity. The cloisonne, which enjoys a high reputation at home and abroad, is beautiful and elegant in modeling, splendid and graceful in design and brilliant in colors. Porcelain is perhaps the greatest invention of the Chinese. The chinaware made in *Jingdezhen*—the capital of porcelain – is known to be ‘as white as jade, as thin as paper, as bright as mirror and as melodious as *qin* (an ancient Chinese musical instrument)’. Silk products and embroidery, exquisite in workmanship, various in patterns, harmonious in color scheme, and distinctive in national style, are really good buys in China.

Many tourists are also interested in some special local crafts such as clay figurines, sandalwood fans, paper-cuttings, theatrical masks, kites, shell-carvings, etc. All in all, China is not only a country with a long history of culture and art, but also a shoppers' paradise. Shouldn't we help our guests take home more happy memories and more keepsakes?

All this creates great opportunities for hotel shops. In order to meet the increasing shopping needs of the customers, the staff should not only be familiar with the goods, the price and the customers, but also have a clean and pleasant appearance, a good command of job-procedures and a correct attitude toward serving the guests wholeheartedly. ‘Try to make every customer feel at home and feel the value for money’. This is the goal of the tourism industry.

Words and Expressions

(1) souvenir	[su:və'niə]	n.	纪念物
(2) dazzling	['dæzliŋ]	adj.	耀眼的
(3) antique	[æn'ti:k]	n.	遗迹, 古物
(4) jewelry	['dʒuəlri]	n.	宝石类
(5) calligraphy	[kə'ligrəfi]	n.	书法
(6) garment	['gɑ:mənt]	n.	服装
(7) tonic	['tɒnik]	n.	滋补品
(8) pillar	['pilə]	n.	支柱
(9) convenience	[kən'vi:niəns]	n.	方便
(10) financial	[faɪ'nænʃəl]	adj.	财政的
(11) domestic	[də'mestik]	adj.	国内的
(12) characterize	['kæriktəraiz]	v.	以……为特性
(13) simplicity	[sim'plisiti]	n.	简朴
(14) delicate	['delikit]	adj.	优美的, 文雅的
(15) lucidity	[lu:'siditi]	n.	明朗, 透明
(16) brilliant	['briljənt]	adj.	光亮的
(17) chinaware	['tʃainəwə]	n.	陶瓷器
(18) exquisite	['ekskwizit]	adj.	绝妙的, 优美的
(19) multifarious	[,mʌlti'fəriəs]	adj.	各式各样的
(20) distinctive	[dis'tɪŋktɪv]	adj.	独特的
(21) figurine	[figju'ri:n]	n.	小雕像
(22) sandalwood	['sændəlwud]	n.	檀香木料
(23) keepsake	['ki:pseik]	n.	纪念物, 遗物
(24) procedure	[prə'si:dʒə]	n.	手续, 程序
(25) wholeheartedly	['həulhɑ:tɪdli]	adv	专心一意地

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. Why is China a shopper's paradise?
2. What is the goal of the tourism industry?

Text B The Best Buy in China

What's the best buy in China ? Here are some tips for you.

China's markets are becoming more prosperous. Shoppers will find that they can get many of the same items in Chinese cities such as *Beijing*, *Shanghai*, *Guangzhou* and *Wuhan* as they do in New York, Tokyo and Paris. However, some of typical Chinese items may not be as readily available in other parts of the world as in Chinese cities. Based on my many years as a tour guide, I suggest you put the following items on your shopping list.

1. Antiques, paintings and calligraphy

These can offer a glimpse of age-old Chinese Civilization. They are both artistic works for appreciation and wise investment.

2. Silk

China is the home of silk where you can get genuine pure silk, which makes for perfect gifts. A trip to a silk factory usually ends up as a shopping spree.

3. Handicraft

Including *Jingdezhen* porcelain, *Beijing* cloisonne, *Yunnan Dali* marble, *Guizhou* Batik cloth (蜡染), *Qingtian* stone carving, *Huangyang* wood carving, *Shanghai* dough modeling, ect.

4. Chinese medicine

5. Souvenirs

Because of cheap labor, hand-made souvenirs in China are really very cheap.

What do you prefer?

Words and Expressions

(1) prosperous ['prɒspərəs] <i>adj.</i>	成功的, 繁荣的
(2) item ['aɪtəm] <i>n.</i>	项目
(3) available [ə'veɪləbl] <i>adj.</i>	可能利用的
(4) glimpse [glɪmps] <i>n.</i>	隐约的一瞥
(5) appreciation [ə,prɪ:'ʃi'eɪʃən] <i>n.</i>	欣赏
(6) investment [ɪn'vestmənt] <i>n.</i>	投资
(7) genuine ['genjuɪn] <i>adj.</i>	真正的
(8) handicraft ['hændɪkrɑ:ft] <i>n.</i>	手工艺品

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. What's the best buy in China ?
2. Surf the internet for more information about Chinese handicrafts and give a presentation in class.



Part IV Writing

Chinese Folk Arts

Chinese folk arts with a broad mass foundation as well as a long history, contain profound cultural and historical connotations. They can stimulate people's aesthetic sense and appreciative taste. Throughout the ages, Chinese folk arts have had a strong local flavor as well as a national style, different in postures and beautiful beyond appreciation.

In technique, Chinese folk arts fall into the categories of cutting, bundling (扎), plaiting (编), knitting, embroidering, carving, molding and painting.

Cutting techniques evolved mainly from paper-cuttings. In the countryside, paper-cuttings are usually made only by women and girls. These used to be one of the crafts that every girl was to master and that were often used to judge brides. Cutting includes paper-cuttings, paper engravings, paper cut silhouettes (剪影), paper folding, paper sculpture and leather-silhouettes.

Bundling includes kites and colored lanterns bundled up with paper, silk or bamboo.

Plaiting, a popular folk art, includes various straw or thread plaited articles. The products include cloth tigers, cool pillows, cushions, tiny fragrant bags, colored silk balls, shoe-pads, velvet flowers and birds.

Knitting is similar to weaving. It includes wax printing (蜡染), bandhnu (扎染), color printing, drawn work (抽花刺绣) and flower knitting or stitching. Colored woolen yarn is often seen knitted into pullovers, sweaters, cardigans and shawls, which are both for admiration and for practical use.

Embroidering includes picture weaving in silk, printing and dyeing. China's four famous styles of embroidery are those of *Suzhou*, *Hunan*, *Guangdong* and *Sichuan*.

Carving includes art depictions of various shapes, such as masks, puppet heads, figures, animals and flowers, which are created with bamboo, wood, jade or horn.

Molding includes dough modeling, clay sculpture, frozen butter sculpture and pottery sculpture. The products serve not only as ornaments but also as children's toys.

Painting involves such techniques as hand painting, incision, patchwork, and pyrograph, each having a style of its own. Woodblock new year pictures are a representative of this art. Pictures of different subjects, themes and forms of expression are produced in dozens of places in the country.

Exercise



Design a leaflet for a local Tourist Information Centre, describing in English what visitors can do in your area. Include the following information:

- museums, art galleries, monuments.
- places of outstanding natural beauty or historic interest.
- local amenities and facilities.
- eating out.



Cultural Tips

Shopping in the U.S.A.

When making a purchase in the United States, you should be aware that, in most cases, the

price on the label is not the price you pay. You will have to pay tax also. Usually the tax is between five and ten percent of the price on the label.

Also, in buying clothes including shoes, you should know that the sizes are measured differently in the U.S. from the way they are measured in China where we use the metric system. In these cases, you can always ask the clerk for help.

If you are looking for an expensive item, it is advisable to check in more than one store to compare their prices. There is no state price in the United States. Smart shoppers often look for 'sales', a time you can get the same thing with the same quality at a much lower price.

Because there are many 'sales' in the U.S., and the stores will lower their prices. This may all be very confusing to the visitors. Which is the best product to buy out of hundreds to choose from? How are you going to know how to get your money's worth when you shop? Perhaps the best advice is: Don't hurry. Visit various stores and determine the quality of the merchandise. Examine the goods carefully. Read the advertisements so that you can compare prices. Explore and examine before you buy. It is wise to be especially careful with products that are on sale, because many stores will not allow goods on sale to be exchanged. In most cases, however, sales are an excellent opportunity to buy quality products at reduced prices.

There is a great variety of shops in the U.S., ranging from very large stores called department stores offering clothing, furniture, household goods and many other goods, to very small shops that specialize in just one kind of product. There are 'discount houses' offering goods at low prices and 'dime stores' specializing in a wide range of inexpensive items.

Unit 12

Farewell

In this unit, you will:

- learn how to see sb off
- read about passengers.information
- write a job application letter
- build up your vocabulary related to the subject



Part I Listening

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

1. When should you get your bags ready?
2. Where should you put your travel document?
3. What is the departure time of the flight according to the passage?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

4. *Beijing* is one of China's three major international hubs, along with *Shanghai* and Hong Kong.
5. Air China is not the only operator that runs nonstop Los Angeles and London flights.
6. Play it safe: check with your airline beforehand.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

The efficient *Beijing* Capital International Airport (PEK) is _____ (1) northeast of the city center. There are _____ (2), connected by a walkway. China Southern's domestic flights operate out of Terminal 1; all other airlines out of Terminal 2. If you can't find your flight on the _____ (3) when you arrive, check that you're in the correct terminal.

Beijing's _____ (4) (known as the 'airport construction fee') is RMB90 for international flights and RMB _____ (5) for domestic. You pay before check-in by purchasing a coupon from the booth inside the terminal, which is then _____ (6) at the entrance to the main departure hall.

Clearing customs and immigration can take a while, especially in the morning, so make sure you arrive at least two hours before your _____ (7).

Both Chinese and Western-style fast-food outlets (经销店) abound—Starbucks and KFC are just two names you'll recognize. Most are open from around 7 a.m. to 11 p.m. Prices for even a soft drink _____ (8) wildly from place to place.



Part II Speaking

Dialogue 1: Farewell at the Airport

(G— Guide; C— Clerk; T— Tourist)

G: Here we are at the airport. Would you please have your bags ready? We are checking in.

T: Thank you so much for your company to the airport and see me off. Where is the check-in desk?

G: It's over there, where a lot of people are lining up. That's it.

T: Oh, I see.

G: And please remember to put your travel document in your carry-on baggage.

T: Great, I almost forget about it. What's more, where can I buy the airport tax?

G: Ha, it is included in the air ticket.

(The tourist comes over to the check-in desk.)

T: I'm going to San Francisco.

C: Your ticket please. *(Looking at the ticket)* Now please put your suitcases on the scales.

T: Are they overweight?

C: Yes, 8 pounds overweight. Is there anything you want to take out?

T: No, thank you.

C: Then the excess baggage will be 30 yuan, sir. *(Take the money)* Thank you. Here's your ticket and boarding pass.

T: Thanks.

Notes

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1. carry-on baggage | 随身携带的行李 |
| 2. overweight ['əʊvəweɪt] adj. | 超重的 |
| 3. excess [ɪk'ses] n. & adj. | 超量 (的) |

Dialogue 2: Bon Voyage

(C— *Cong*, a tour guide; R— *Richard*, a businessman)

C: I'm terribly sorry that you are leaving soon. Is there anything I can do for you before you board the plane?

R: Thanks. I really appreciate your help during my stay in *Shanghai*.

C: It's my pleasure.

R: It's very kind of you to see me off. I really had a very pleasant stay here.

C: It's a shame you haven't got the time to visit all the places of interest.

R: Business trips never leave much time for sightseeing.

C: I look forward to your next visit to *Shanghai*.

R: I surely will if I have a chance. What I have seen here has left a deep impression on me.

C: I'm glad to hear that.

R: Don't forget to drop in on me if you and Mrs. *Cong* are ever in New York.

C: We certainly will. Oh, Mr. Richard, have you filled in the Customs Declaration Form?

R: I have gone through customs and other formalities. These are my ticket and boarding pass.

C: The plane will take off soon. It's time for us to say goodbye. Have a nice journey! Bon voyage!

R: Thanks. Goodbye.

Notes

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| 1. Bon voyage | (法语) 一路顺风 |
| 2. appreciate [ə'pri:ʃi.əɪt] v. | 感激 |
| 3. Customs Declaration Form [ˌdeklə'reɪʃən] | 海关申报表 |

Professional Practice

The following tips are useful when checking and confirming information.

- repeat the important dates, times and prices

Customer *It's PDC0968-03*

Travel agent *So that's PDC0968-03*

- give yourself a little time to check information

One moment, please.

I'll just check that for you.

- confirm booking in writing

I'll send you an E-mail today to confirm those changes.

The tour is for five days, departing from ... on ...

We hope you enjoy your tour with ...

- check spellings and numbers that sound the same

Is that P for Poland or D for Denmark?

Sorry. Did you say fifty? Five-O?

Exercise



Complete the following dialogue and speak with your partner.

(G— Guide; T— Tourist)

G: Is everything in order now?

T1: Yes. 1 (飞机什么时候起飞)?

G: At ten thirty. There is still half an hour to go. Please take care of you, 2 (手提行李).

T2: Mr. Wang, during our trip in the past ten days, you've shown your concern for us in every respect. I really don't know how to express my gratitude.

G: 3 (谢谢你们这样说).

T1: Before I came here, I only had an understanding of China from books and papers, television and films. Now I've seen China with my own eyes.

T2: 4 (但重要的是从真正生活中学到了东西).

T1: It's a pity we haven't got enough time to visit more places.

G: 5 (欢迎再来中国). You're always welcome. It's time to board the plane.

T2: Good-bye, Mr. Wang. Thank you very much.

G: 6 (希望你们再来中国, 再见)!



Part III Reading

Text A A Farewell Speech

Ladies and Gentlemen,
Good evening!



We are very happy to be here tonight to express our thanks and to bid farewell to our British friends. We are at the end of our journey in *Beijing*. We hope you have a deep impression of *Beijing*.

First of all, on behalf of our China International Travel Service, I wish to thank you all for the understanding and cooperation you have given us in the past five days, which is indispensable to the smooth implementation of a travel program. You have been very punctual on all occasions and very attentive when we had anything to tell you. Also, you have been kind enough to offer us suggestions on how to better our guiding service. I'd like to add that you are the best group we've ever been with.

When you traveled in *Beijing*, you visited the most famous scenic spots in our capital. All of you have ascended the Great Wall and marveled at its grandeur. Nobody failed to appreciate the exquisite exhibits and the grand royal architectures in the Imperial Palace. When you walked leisurely in the Summer Palace, you certainly feel relaxed at the picturesque landscape scattered with elegant gardens and pavilions. In the *Tian'anmen* Square you not only saw the world's largest city square, but also witnessed the progress and prosperity of China.

Parting is such sweet sorrow. As you have probably observed, *Beijing* is developing very quickly. When and if you come back in the future, the city may have changed beyond recognition. I hope to see you again in the future and to be your guide again.

Once again, thank you for your cooperation and support.

Bon voyage!

Words and Expressions

- | | |
|--|----------|
| (1) bid [bɪd] v. | 致意 |
| (2) farewell ['fæwəl] n. | 告别, 辞别 |
| (3) indispensable [ˌɪndɪs'pensəbl] adj. | 不可缺少的 |
| (4) implementation [ˌɪmplɪmen'teɪʃən] n. | 实施 |
| (5) punctual ['pʌŋktʃuəl] adj. | 准时的 |
| (6) attentive ['ətentɪv] adj. | 特别留意的 |
| (7) grandeur ['grændʒə] n. | 庄严, 雄伟 |
| (8) royal ['rɔɪəl] adj. | 王室的, 王位的 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text A.

1. Where are the tourists from?
2. How many days do they stay in China?
3. What are the scenic spots they visited in *Beijing*?

Text B Passenger Information

Reconfirmation of Reservations

Passengers holding open-date tickets must reserve their seats before taking a flight. This kind of ticket has no priority in reservation. International route passengers having reserved their seats on connecting or return flights should reconfirm their reservations at the connecting or return point not later than 72 hours before the connecting or return flights, if they stay at such points for more than 72 hours. Failure to make such reconfirmation will result in the cancellation of the space reserved. International passengers staying at the connecting or return points less than 72 hours do not have to reconfirm their reservations.

Checking-in Procedure

Passengers must arrive at the airport early enough for all formalities to be completed. Passengers must arrive at the designated airport at the designated time. Domestic passengers should show their Identity Cards and tickets for check-in procedure. International passengers should show tickets and travel documents for exit and check-in procedures. Departures cannot be delayed for passengers who arrive late. If their travel documents do not conform to regulations, they will bear any loss and responsibility for not being able to complete the necessary exit and check-in procedures on time.

Safety Inspection

According to government regulations, Air China has the right to inspect passengers' persons and their baggage. During inspection if any passenger or his baggage is found to be a danger to safety, Air China will proceed according to relevant government regulations. If any passenger refuses to be inspected, Air China will not allow him to take his flight.

Baggage

Your baggage should contain personal belongings only; commercial samples may be carried, provided you arrange to be at the airport for international flights no later than the time specified by the local Customs.

Certain articles are potentially dangerous when carried by air and their transportation must be arranged with the carriers concerned. Medicinal and toilet articles are necessary or appropriate for the passenger during the journey (such as hairsprays, perfumes, medicines containing alcohol) may be carried in limited quantities.

Words and Expressions

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-----------|--------|
| (1) reconfirmation | [ri:kən'fə:'meɪʃən] | <i>n.</i> | 再确认 |
| (2) reservation | [,rezə'veɪʃən] | <i>n.</i> | 预定 |
| (3) identity | [aɪ'dentɪti] | <i>n.</i> | 身份 |
| (4) departure | [dɪ'pɑ:tʃə] | <i>n.</i> | 离开, 出发 |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|----|----|
| (4) transportation | [ˌtrænsˈpɔːtɪʃən] | n. | 运输 |
| (5) perfume | [pəˈfjuːm] | n. | 香水 |
| (7) hairspray | [ˈheɪsprɛɪ] | n. | 发胶 |
| (8) alcohol | [ˈælkəˌhɒl] | n. | 酒精 |

Reading Comprehension

Answer the following questions based on text B.

1. When should the international route passengers having reserved their seats on connecting or return flights reconfirm their reservations?
2. What should domestic passengers show for check-in procedure?
3. What will Air China do if any passenger refuses to be inspected?
4. What should your baggage contain?



Part IV Writing

How to Write Job Application Letter

An application letter accompanies and introduces a resume when the resume is being mailed to a prospective employer. Here are some guidelines for composing an effective application letter:

1. An application letter should always be addressed to a specific individual.
2. In the opening paragraph of the letter, you should clarify which specific job you want and how you learned about the job vacancy.
3. The letter should go on to state, in summary fashion, why you want the job and why you qualify for it.
4. End by requesting an interview. Provide a phone number so the employer can contact you quickly. If you can be reached only at certain times, specify them.
5. Be concise. Generally speaking, an application letter shouldn't be longer than one page.
6. Avoid bragging or boasting. Highlight your most impressive achievements relating to the job you are seeking, and let these achievements speak for themselves.

Sample

Rm 316 New College Dormitory
Xuan Wu University, 2270 Zhongshan Road
Nanjing, Jiangsu, 212000

Tel: (025)9709399

E-mail: Wangm@yahoo.com.cn

August 25, 2008

Dear Ms. Thompson,

In reply to your advertisement in China Daily on Monday 12 March, I would like to apply for the position of Assistant Resort manager, *Nanjing* Tour International.

I am an easygoing and motivated person and I also have strong communication and organisational skills. I have not worked as a tour guide before but I have experience as a hotel receptionist and I have Leisure and Tourism Diploma.

I believe I am hard –working and reliable and would very much like to gain much work experience.

Please find enclosed a copy of my CV. I am available for interview at any time. I look forward to hearing from you.

Thank you for your consideration.

Sincerely,
Wang Ming



Cultural Tips

Private things are taboos. When you start a conversation, try to avoid the following questions:

Are you married?

Do you have a family?

How many children have you got?

How old are you?

What else will you do except travel in China?

What are you going to do when you return home?

Always remember to begin a conversation with impersonal subjects. Only when you have a good friendship can you talk with your conversational partner something about private information.

Conversational openers can be:

Nice weather, isn't it?

I hope it will clear up soon.

It's a little rainy (dry, windy, snowy, cloudy, sunny), isn't it?

Is this typical spring weather?

What is autumn like here?

Did you hear the news that...

Did you watch the program...

There is no change in the program.

We will have a very nice (busy) day.

Appendix A

联合国《世界文化遗产名录》中的 26 个中国项目 (26 UNESCO world heritage in China) 及批准时间。

From 1987 to 2008, 37 Chinese ancient heritages were inscribed on the World Heritages list by UNESCO. 26 of the 37 heritages were inscribed as World Cultural Heritages, 7 of them were inscribed as World Natural Heritages and 4 of them were inscribed as both Cultural and Natural heritages.

(1) The Great Wall (长城), 1987, Beijing

Totalling 6700 kilometers long, the Great Wall is one of the gigantic engineering masterpieces in the ancient world. During the Spring and Autumn (770 B.C.-476 B.C.) and Warring States (475 B.C.-221 B.C.) periods, the ducal states *Yan*, *Zhao* and *Qin* respectively built walls around their territories for self-defence and against invasion. After unifying the whole country *Qin Shihuang*, the first emperor of the *Qin* Dynasty (221 B.C.-206 B.C.) had these walls linked up and extended. Later on reinforcements, renovations and construction of strategic passes and watch towers were carried out along the Wall running from *Jiayuguan* Pass of *Gansu* Province in the west to *Shanhaiguan* Pass of *Hebei* Province in the east. The representative sections of the Great Wall built in *Ming* times (A.D.1368-A.D.1644) are situated near *Shanhaiguan* Pass, *Gubeikou* Pass, *Juyongguan* Pass.

(2) Emperor *Qin shihuang* Mausoleum in *Shanxi* (陕西秦始皇兵马俑), 1987, *Shanxi*

Mausoleum of *Qin shihuang* is a magnificent, luxurious underground palace. In 1974 the Vault No.1 was discovered and in the vault were found more than 6000 figures, life-size warriors arranged in rectangular battle formation. The array breathes the power of *Qin shihuang's* army. In 1979 a Museum of *Qin* Pottery Figures was constructed.

(3) The Grottoes in *Dunhuang*, *Gansu* (甘肃敦煌莫高窟), 1987, *Gansu*

As one of China's three treasure-troves of sculptural art decorating stone caves, the grottoes were hewn in the steep cliffs of the hill, being arranged in five tiers. Initial construction of *Mogao* Grottoes began in A.D 366., the second year of the *Jianyuan* Reign of the Former *Qin* Kingdom. There remained 492 grottoes with 2415 colour statues, 1045 pieces of murals totalling 45,000 square metres, which were made during the periods of the Northern *Wei* (386-534), the *Sui* (589-618), the *Tang* (618-907), the *Song* (960-1279), the *Yuan* (1279-1368). Also five wooden-structure buildings remain which were built during the *Tang* and the *Song* Dynasties.

(4) The Site of Peking Man at *Zhoukoudian* (周口店北京猿人遗址), 1987, *Beijing*

In 1929, an integrated brain box of Peking Man was found on *Longgu* Hill, *Zhoukoudian*. So far, lots of fossil remains including 6 brain boxes, 15 mandibles, 157 teeth and shivers of other bones have been unearthed on *Longgu* Hill. These fossils can form 40 bodies of Peking Men. 68.2% of Peking Man died before 14 years old and only 4.5% could live more than 50 years.

(5) The Palace Museum in *Beijing* (北京故宫), 1987, *Beijing*

Gugong (Palace Museum) served as the residence of the emperors during the *Ming* and the *Qing* Dynasty. It is the largest and most complete extant group of the ancient imperial palace buildings in China. Composed of the Outer Palace and the Inner Court, the museum occupies 720, 000 square metres and has more than 9, 000 rooms. The Outer Palace, where emperors wielded power, centres on *Taihe* (Supreme Harmony) Hall (also called the Throne Hall). The Inner Court, where emperors handled the administrative processes of government affairs and where the imperial family lived, played and offered sacrifices to gods, consists of *Qianqing* (Heavenly Purity) Palace, the East and the West Palaces, the Imperial Garden, etc. The Palace Museum houses, a large number of precious historical relics.

(6) The Potala Palace of *Lhasa, Tibet* (西藏拉萨布达拉宫), 1994, *Tibet*

The Potala Palace is a castle-like religious architecture complex well known in China and abroad. The Potala Palace was built in the seventh century by King Songtsan Gambo, unifier of Tibet, for his bride, the *Han* nationality princess *Wencheng*, who was sent to him by the *Tang* Dynasty court in *Chang'an* (today's *Xi'an*). The Potala Palace includes about one thousand chambers, palaces and halls. All constructions look resplendent and magnificent and are exquisite masterpieces of architecture in traditional Tibetan style. The Potala Palace collected a vast number of valuable historical relics including mandates and seals from the central authorities of the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasty, gifts and rare curios of the Dalais' officials sent by the kings and Buddhist relics. The Potala Palace has been a sacred place for hundreds of years. Thousands of pilgrims from Tibet, other parts of China and abroad come every year to pay homage. Their devotion is shown by the difficult journeys they have to make to reach their 'Holy City'. Now the Palace has become more magnificent after its renewal recently.

(7) Imperial Summer Villa and Outer Temples at *Chengde, Hebei Province* (河北承德避暑山庄及外八庙), 1994, *Hebei*

The mountain resort used to be a summer villa for the *Qing* Dynasty emperors *Kangxi*, *Qianlong* and *Xianfeng* who also attended affairs of state during their stay here. It boasts natural scenery of water and mountains dotted with 72 scenic spots each having a tablet engraved with characters in the calligraphy of emperors. The most celebrated spot in the Front Palace is the Hall of Simplicity and Honesty, also known as the *Nanmu* Hall, where *Qing* emperors once received foreign envoys and their officials. Also a display room of the *Qing* Dynasty cultural relics is set up here. When touring the lake, one can imagine being in the charming land of south China. In the plain, one will get the feeling of the magnificent scenery of the grasslands north of the Great Wall. The hilly section consisting of pavilions and temples set amidst luxuriant trees creates an atmosphere of serenity. Lying northeast of the enclosure of the summer resort, a group of temples built at the beginning of the *Qing* Dynasty has long been referred to as 'the Eight Outer Temples'.

(8) Mt. *Wudangshan* and Its Ancient Architecture Complex in *Hubei* (湖北武当山及其古建筑群), 1994, *Hubei*

Lying in southwest of *Danjiangkou* City, it extends 400 kilometres, including 72 peaks, 24 ravines, 11 caves, 9 springs and 3 deep pools. This mountain became a Taoist centre and scenic spot

in the *Tang* Dynasty. It is also the place of origin of 'Wudang' Boxing in China.

(9) *Qufu and Its Confucian Temple, Family Mansion and Woods in Shandong* (山东曲阜及孔庙、孔府、孔林), 1994, *Shandong*

A famous city in history and culture with a population of about 80,000, *Qufu* was the capital of the State of *Lu* in the Spring and Autumn Period and the birthplace of Confucius. It has a number of relics and historic sites.

Confucius Temple is situated in *Qufu* and is an ancestral temple where memorial ceremonies for Confucius have been held since the Western *Han* Dynasty. The temple has nine country yards and is divided into three routes—the east, the middle and the west. The most majestic building is the *Dacheng* Hall (Great Hall of Confucius) .

Surrounded by an enclosing wall 7.5 kilometres in circumference, it is the burial place of Confucius and his descendants. With ancient trees reaching into the skies and stone inscriptions standing like a forest, the woods are covered by old trees of more than 20 thousand years, which are evergreen in four seasons.

(10) *Mt. Lushan Scenic Area in Jiangxi* (江西庐山风景名胜区), 1996, *Jiangxi*

Towering beautifully and majestically above the *Jiangxi* plain and by the waters of Lake *Poyang*, Mount *Lushan* is a unique mountain scenery spot and an ideal summer resort. Its 1,474 meter main peak, *Hanyang* Peak, is shrouded in mist all year round. The weather here is dotted with springs. Major scenic spots of Mount *Lushan* are *Guiling* Town, also called 'garden in the clouds' *Hanpoku* Pass, White Deer Cave, Five Old Men Peak, Three-Fold Waterfall, Dragon-Head Cliff and *Donglin* Temple.

(11) *Classical Gardens in Suzhou* (苏州古典园林), 1997, *Jiangsu*

Suzhou, sometimes called 'The Venice of the East' because of its many in-town canals and waterways, has a history of 2,500 years and is known in China as a paradise on earth. The city has long been a commercial and handicraft center. It now has 400 historical relics and sites under protection. *Suzhou* is also the home of classical Chinese private gardens, noted for their exquisite delicacy and beauty. The city's other tourist attractions are *Zhuozhengyuan* Garden, Tiger Hill Park, *Wangshiyuan* Garden (fisherman's garden), *Yiyuan* Garden, *Xiyuan* Garden, *Hanshan* Monastery, *Xuanmiao* Taoist Temple, *Linyan* Hill and *Tianping* Hill. *Suzhou* produces embroidery. Its double-side embroidery enjoys special fame. *Suzhou* jade carvings, sandalwood fans and other handicrafts are popular in both China and abroad.

(12) *Ancient Town of Pingyao, Shanxi Province* (山西平遥古城), 1997, *Shanxi*

The city wall was first built during the *Zhou* Dynasty (11B.C.—256 B.C.) and was expanded into a brick and stone walls in 1370, the third year of the reign of *Ming* Emperor *Hongwu*. Now *Pingyao* city is the only one in China completely reserved as it was hundred of years ago, no buildings, only narrow stone-plate street with many Chinese style shops on both sides. It serves as a living sample for the study of Chinese politics, economy, culture, military, architecture and arts.

(13) *Lijiang Ancient Town, Yunnan* (云南丽江古城), 1997, *Yunnan*

'Eastern Venice', 'Gusu City on *Yunnan* Plateau'—these high praises are given by tourists to *Lijiang* ancient town. The City has a long history of more than 800 years and was once the famous

‘Transfer Station of Tea and Caravan’ whose route was from *Dali* to Lhasa, then to India in ancient times. *Lijiang* Ancient Town mixes distribution and architectural characteristics of *Han*, Tibetan and *Bai* nationalities into one and is well-preserved, serving as the rarely valuable legacy of studying Chinese architecture and culture histories.

Naxi ancestors invented the age old *Dongba* culture praised as ‘The only living pictographic character in the world’ with high research value.

(14) Summer Palace in Beijing (北京颐和园), 1998, Beijing

First built during the reign of Emperor *Qianlong*(1736—1795)of the *Qing* Dynasty(1644—1911), this most magnificent imperial garden in China was originally called *Qingyi*(Clear Ripples)Garden and then renamed *Yiheyuan* as a summer resort. After that the Empress Dowager *Cixi* during the reign of Emperor *Guangxu* (1875—1908)of the *Qing* Dynasty had it restored with funds intended for navy development. Totalling 290 hectares, the garden comprises *Wanshou*(Longevity)Hill, *Kunming* Lake,etc., and has over 3000 halls, towers, pavilions, of which the main buildings are *Renshou* (Benevolence and Longevity)Hall, Big Theater Stage, *Leshou* (Happiness in Longevity)Hall and *Xiequ* (Harmonious Interest)Garden inside the East Palace Gate; Temple of Buddhist Virtue, *Paiyun* (Cloud-Dispelling)Hall, *Long* Corridor, Court of Picture-like Scenery, *Qingyan* Boat(Marble Boat)on the southwestern foot of the *Wanshou*(Longevity)Hill; *Zhichun*(Perceiving the Spring)Pavilion, and the seventeen-Arch Bridge on the shore of the *Kunming* Lake and *Songtang* Hall(Pine Hall)in the Back Hill. Furniture inside main halls is now arranged exactly as it was in the end of the *Qing* Dynasty.

(15) The Temple of Heaven in Beijing (北京天坛), 1998, Beijing

Temple of Heaven, the largest group of temple buildings in China was the place where the *Ming* and *Qing* emperors went to worship Heaven and pray for good harvest. It comprises mainly *Qinian* Hall (Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest) , the Imperial Vault of Heaven, the Echo Wall, Circular Mound Altar and Fasting Hall, etc.

(16) Dazu Stone Sculptures in Chongqing (重庆大足石刻), 1999, Chongqing

They include statues of Confucian, Buddhist and Taoist which are scattered in 40 spots, including hills of *Beishan*, *Nanshan*, *Baodingshan*, *Shimenshan*, *Shixuanshan* and so on. They were created in the *Tang* and *Song* Dynasties.

(17) Xidi and Hongcun, Old Villages in Huangshan, Anhui Province (西递和宏村, 安徽黄山古村落), 2000, Anhui

The two traditional villages of *Xidi* and *Hongcun* in *Huangshan*, *Anhui* province have a long history, one thousand years for *Xidi* and eight hundred years for *Hongcun*, preserved to a remarkable extent the appearance of non-urban settlements of a type that has largely disappeared or has been transformed in the past century. Their street patterns, their architecture and decoration, and the integration of houses with comprehensive water systems are unique survivals.

(18) Xiaoling Mausoleum and the Ming Tombs of 13 Ming emperors (孝陵及明十三陵), 2003, Nanjing and Beijing

The imperial ‘*Xiaoling* Mausoleum’ in *Nanjing*, capital of east China’s *Jiangsu* Province, buried the first emperor of the *Ming* Dynasty. Emperor *Zhu Yuanzhang* and his empress were buried

in an underground palace in a round hillock with a diameter of 400 meters. The architecture of the *Xiaoling* Mausoleum had a great impact on subsequent emperors' tombs in the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties.

Another showcase of China's funeral architecture and culture centuries ago is the *Ming* Tombs of 13 *Ming* emperors and 23 empresses built outside *Beijing* from the 15th to the 17th century. This is China's best-preserved tomb group.

(19) Longmen Grottoes in Henan (河南龙门石窟), 2000, Henan

The grottoes lie 13 kilometres south of *Luoyang* and constitute one of China's most famous treasure houses of grotto art. Altogether there are over 2100 caves dating from the Northern *Wei* to the *Tang* Dynasty, over 40 Buddhist pagodas, more than 3000 pieces of stele inscriptions, and over 200,000 statues. The biggest statue in *Longmen* Grottoes is more than 17 metres high and the smallest one is only 2 centimeters high. In the neighbourhood stands the tomb of *Bai Juyi* (a great *Tang* Dynasty poet).

(20) Mt. Qingcheng and Dujiangyan Irrigation System in Sichuan (四川青城山和都江堰), 2000, Sichuan

In *Dujiangyan* a water project was built more than 2000 years ago under the order of the local officer *Li Bing* and his son in the State of *Qin*, Warring States Period. Spots there cover *Fulong* Taoist Temple, *Yulei* Hill, *Erlang* Temple, etc.

15 kilometres southward from *Dujiangyan* stands the famous Taoist's Hill. With the *Tianshi* Cave and the *Shangqing* Palace, it has been praised as 'a quietly unique place under heaven'.

(21) Yungang Grottoes (云冈石窟), 2001, Shanxi

Ranking as one of China's three greatest grotto centres, these grottoes are found at the south foot of the *Wuzhou* Mountains, 16 kilometres to the west of *Datong*. They were first hewn in the Northern *Wei* Dynasty. Today there still exist 53 grottoes and 51,000 Buddhist statues with a distinguished art style of the incorporation of the *Qin* and *Han* traditions with the outside cultural essence.

(22) Capital Cities and Tombs of the Ancient Koguryo Kingdom (吉林高句丽王城王陵及贵族墓葬), 2004, Jilin

Koguryo People are the ancestors of *Chaoxian* People. The Koguryo People founded the kingdom in 37 B.C. The General Tomb, which is 31 meters long and 12 meters high, enjoys a reputation of 'oriental pyramid'. Besides the 2,000-year-old frescos can be seen clearly today.

(23) Historic Centre of Macau (澳门历史建筑群), 2005, Macau

The historic centre of Macau contains 8 ancient city squares and 22 ancient buildings. Macau had been under the control of Portugal for over 400 years so most of the ancient buildings, which include churches, government offices and theatres, were built by the Portuguese.

(24) Yin Xu (河南殷墟), 2006, Henan

Yin Xu, which covers an area of 24 square kilometers, was the capital city of *Shang* Dynasty (17 B.C. to 11 B.C.). In 1899, archaeologists discovered inscriptions of oracle bone which are the origin of Chinese characters in *Yin Xu* for the first time and so far more than 150, 000 inscriptions of oracles have been discovered in *Yin Xu*.

(25) *Kaiping Diaolou and Villages* (广东开平碉楼), 2007, *Guangdong*

Kaiping Diaolou was initially built in 16 B.C.. At that time, the villagers built it to resist enemies. *Kaiping Diaolou* buildings have three functions which are resisting enemies, fighting against floods and living.

(26) *Fujian Tulou* (福建土楼), 2008, *Fujian*

The first *Fujian Tulou* building was built over 800 years ago. Most of the existing *Tulou* buildings are located in *Nanjing* and *Yongding* of *Fujian* Province.

Appendix B

听力文字材料

Unit 1

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Susan: Good morning, Susan speaking.

Caller: Hello, is that Seaview Travel?

Susan: Yes, how can I help you?

Caller: I'd like to book a city break in *Nanjing* please, as advertised in your brochure. It's on page 25.

Susan: Right. When would you like to travel?

Caller: 15 October for three nights.

Susan: 15 October. Fine. For three nights you say.

Caller: That's right. Leaving from *Dalian*.

Susan: OK, I'll check availability. Sorry to keep you waiting. OK, here we are. That's a direct flight with China Southern. What time would you like to leave?

Caller: Early morning if possible.

Susan: Fine, there's a flight that leaves at 8:00.

Caller: Yes, that sounds OK. How long does the flight last?

Susan: It takes 1 hour and 20 minutes. With check-in an hour beforehand. And then back on 18 October. There's a flight at 17:45 or 18:50.

Caller: The later one, please.

Susan: OK. Is it just yourself that's traveling?

Caller: Yes, it is.

Susan: Could I just take some details? Can you tell me your name, please?

Caller: Yes, it's Porter, Harry Porter.

Susan: P-O-R-T-E-R?

Caller: That's right.

Susan: And your address, Mr. Porter?

Caller: 20 *Linghai* Road, *Gangjingzi* District.

Susan: And your telephone number, please?

Caller: 0411-82779111.

Susan: 0411-82779111. And which hotel have you chosen?

Caller: *Wanda* Holiday Inn seems to be very good. Is it with a continental breakfast?

Susan: Yes, that's right. It's a lovely five-star hotel. I'm sure you'll like it. And is it a single room?

Caller: Yes.

Susan: OK. So that's three nights from 15 October for Harry Porter, departure *Dalian*, return from *Nanjing* airport on 18 October. The price is 840 *yuan* in all. Do you have a pen and paper.

Caller: Hang on. OK.

Susan: I'm just going to give you your booking reference number. It's BT 2510. I'll prepare everything for you and put it in the post this evening. And how would you like to pay?

Statements:

1. Harry Porter will stay three days in *Nanjing*.
2. It is alright that Mr. Porter arrives at the airport before 8 o'clock that morning.
3. Mr. Porter will return to *Dalian* in the afternoon of 18 at.
4. Mr. Porter has booked a single room in a five-star hotel.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Conversation 1

Woman: And so could you tell me what the price includes?

Travel consultant: Well, the price is inclusive of air travel, 3 nights in *Nanjing*, full board and all the excursions except the one on Day 2 which is optional.

Woman: What's that exactly?

Travel consultant: Um ... I think that's a guided tour round *Nanjing*, just let me check in the brochure. Yes, that's right.

Woman: Actually, on second thoughts. I think it's a bit expensive.

Travel consultant: Well, possibly, but on the other hand it is excellent value for money.(pause)No? Well, what about going ...(fade).

Questions:

5. What does the woman want to consult?
6. What's the woman's opinion about the guided tour round *Nanjing*?

Conversation 2

A: Good morning. Would you like some help or are you just looking?

B: Good morning. Well, I was considering taking a short trip. You don't happen to have any bargain packages, do you?

A: Ah well. As it so happens, yes. But could you first give me some idea of where and when you'd like to go?

B: Anytime between now and February really but the sooner the better.

A: Would you prefer to ski in *Haerbin* or *Dalian*?

B: I was thinking of *Haerbin* but it's more a question of cost and good skiing. Could you

suggest where we can find good intermediate to advanced ski runs?

A: Mm, well ... we have a seven-night self-catering deal to *Yabuli* near *Haerbin* and that's 1200 *yuan* and one to *Anbo* in *Dalian* for 1000 *yuan*. Both leave this Saturday. That's not too short notice, is it?

B: No, that's fine. Um, my partner prefers *Haerbin* so I guess I'll take that one. Er, could you tell me which airport the flight leaves from?

A: Yes, Vancouver.

B: And the plane comes back to Vancouver, does it?

A: That's right.

B: Fine.

A: Right, well, let me take a few particulars. Could you tell me what your name is?

B: Yes, Louisa Barnes.

A: Um ... yes ... er, would you mind spelling that for me?

Questions:

7. What kind of trip does the speaker want to take?
8. Which city will the speaker go?
9. How much does the trip cost?

Task 3

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

A Ceremonial Speech at a Chinese Dinner Party

Ladies and gentlemen: It's a great pleasure to have you all here this evening. On behalf of (1) the China Textile Import and Export Company, I'd like to extend a warm (2) welcome to you all. Welcome to *Beijing*! Welcome to the trade fair!

I also want to take this opportunity (3) to express my thanks for the close cooperation and kind support our friends have given us over the years.

Now, I'd like you to join (4) me in a toast: To the success of the fair! To our friendship and cooperation! To the health (5) of everyone! Cheers!

Unit 2

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Call 1

Beijing Press: Hello, *Beijing* Press, can I help you?

Agent: Good morning, this is Sunshine Tours. Can I speak to Mrs. Smith, please, on extension 216.

Beijing Press: Hold the line, I'm putting you through.

Mrs. Smith: Hello, Mrs. Smith speaking.

Questions:

1. Whom does the speaker want to call?
2. What's Mrs. Smith's phone number?

Call 2

Customer: Can you tell me how much that'll be?

Agent: Yes, that's 285 *yuan* plus a 20 *yuan* sea-view supplement and that's per person per night, so that comes to 405 *yuan* and another twice 200 *yuan* flight supplement charge.

Customer: Oh, thank you.

Questions:

3. How much is the flight supplement charge?
4. What is the total price?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Receptionist: Seaview Hotel. How can I help you?

Caller: Hello, I'd like to book a room for my husband and myself, please.

Receptionist: Hold the line, please. I'll put you through to the Reservations.

Reservations: Reservations.

Caller: Good afternoon, I'd like to make a booking for myself and my husband.

Reservations: Could I have your name, please?

Caller: Yes, it's Mary Washington.

Reservations: OK. And when would you like to come?

Caller: The weekend of 12 October—for two days, please.

Reservations: I'm sorry Mrs. Washington, will that be one or two nights?

Caller: Oh, yes sorry, two days and two nights—arriving 12 October and leaving on 14 October.

Reservations: And that would be a double room, would it? Would you prefer smoking or non-smoking?

Caller: Non-smoking, please.

Reservations: Hold the line, please. I'll just check ... I can put you in 205.

Caller: Well, that's all right, we'll take that.

Reservations: Fine. How would you be paying, Mrs. Washington?

Caller: By credit card, Visa.

Reservations: Could you give me the number, please?

Caller: Yes, it's 3556 1245 7689 4324.

Reservations: So that's 3556 1245 7689 4324 and your address, please?

Caller: 23, Littlerock Road, Vancouver.

Reservations: L-i-t-t-l-e-r-o-c-k?

Caller: That's right. In Vancouver.

Reservations: Right, Mrs. Washington, I've made the reservation. We look forward to seeing

you again on 12 October.

Caller: Thank you.

Reservations: You're welcome. Goodbye.

Caller: Oh, I nearly forgot, I was wondering if you could arrange for a bottle of champagne to be in the room when we come, it's our wedding anniversary.

Reservations: That's no problem. I've made a note and it'll be ready when you arrive.

Caller: Thank you so much. Goodbye.

Reservations: Goodbye.

Questions:

5. For whom does the speaker want to book a room?
6. How long will the couple stay in the hotel?
7. How will Mrs. Washington pay?
8. Why would Mrs. Washington like to have a bottle of champagne in the room when they come?

Task 3

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Before a group arrives at a hotel, a local guide (1) should make a brief introduction of the hotel to the tourists. This introduction should include the hotel's name, its rating, location, surroundings (2), facilities and functions etc., so that the tourists could be familiar with it during their stay.

Hotel services may include food and beverage (3) service like restaurants, cafes, shops, bars, or room service, housekeeping including laundry service, and sport service like swimming pool, tennis court, and badminton court. Some common service like Front Desk, Money Exchange Desk (4) and Telecommunication Center should also be introduced to tourists.

No matter what you will say, please do it on bus, with your microphone, for it's the best time for you to catch their attention when they are so curious about (5) this strange land.

Unit 3

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

China's cuisine has evolved into one of the great cuisines of the world. For more than 5,000 years, food has played an important role in nearly all aspects of Chinese society from health and medicine to business and celebration and it is no less important today. The overall importance of food in China can't be understated; upon greeting, Westerners will inquire about your health, but the Chinese will ask if you've eaten.

Rich in scenic beauty, China's geography spans a wide range from fertile plains to high mountains. Its climate is also extremely broad in scope, ranging from sub-arctic to subtropical with everything in between. This combination of varied geography, climate and sheer land size produces an extraordinary richness of fruits, vegetables, meats and seafood, and has evolved into one of the

most interesting, creative and widely enjoyed cuisines of the world.

Questions:

1. In which field does food play an important role in China?
2. What is the range of China's geography?
3. What is the climate like in China?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Emphasis on the freshness, flavor and texture of ingredients is key to fine Chinese cooking. To get the most out of even simple ingredients, a variety of techniques are used to highlight food qualities. Quick cooking with a pot and deep-frying are universal to most styles of cooking in China. You'll also find other cooking methods such as steaming, roasting, barbecuing, stewing, poaching and braising used extensively.

The cuisine of the coastal regions shows the outside influence. In general the farther south you travel the more tropical the weather, affording better growing conditions and the lighter and more refined the food tends to be. With harsh winters and short growing conditions, northern and western regions tend to offer much heartier cuisine. Traders, missionaries and invading peoples have all had their influence on how gastronomy (美食) has evolved in various regions. New world foods such as tomatoes and corn are now common ingredients throughout China, in Hong Kong you'll find the use of mayonnaise (蛋黄酱) and chilies have directly influenced an entire school of food from *Sichuan*. In ancient times and even today, those living in the remote areas didn't travel extensively and there have been few outside influences from other cultures. The foods they eat and their cooking, essentially their entire way of life, has been insulated and has remained the same for generations. If you visit these remote places, you'll have a fascinating opportunity to have a taste of ancient history.

Statements:

4. Emphasis on the freshness, flavor and texture of ingredients is key to fine Chinese cooking.
5. Quick cooking with a pot and deep-frying are universal to most styles of cooking in China.
6. Traders, missionaries and invading peoples had less effect on Chinese food ingredients.
7. With harsh winters and short growing conditions, northern and western regions tend to offer hot cuisine.
8. In ancient times and even today, those living in the remote areas didn't travel extensively and there have been few outside influences from other cultures.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Western Dinner

The Western dinner is the most important meal of the day (1). At a formal dinner, people will start with an appetizer. A liquor (2) normally goes with the appetizer. Then comes the soup which

goes with sherry. After the soup, fish or seafood (3) is served together with chilled white wine. Then the main course, normally a meat item, accompanied (4) by vegetable with salad and dressing, is served with champagne or red wine. Dessert, cheese and fruit will be served after the main course (5).

Unit 4

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

As the political and cultural heart of China, *Beijing* has a rich history that's mirrored in its spectacular palaces, temples and parks. However, this doesn't mean that it rests on the past. Quite the contrary, *Beijing* is a vibrant international capital that's moving toward the future at hyper-speed. Thanks to its roaring economy, skyscrapers crowd the skyline, cars jam the roads and residents flock to spend at a frenetic pace.

Beijing is a city of contrasts, vast neon-lit avenues coexist with narrow hutongs and futuristic structures of highrises cast their shadow over ancient palaces. Friendly and hardworking, the city's population of about 14 million is also diverse. Old men with pet songbirds share the streets with busy executives and foreign investors with migrants from the countryside. Along with its people, historical sights and vibrancy, *Beijing's* drawing cards include its mouth-watering cuisine, fantastic shopping and thriving nightlife. In short, a thrilling and unforgettable experience awaits visitors in *Beijing*.

Statements:

1. *Beijing* has a rich history that's mirrored in its spectacular palaces, temples and parks.
2. *Beijing* is a city of contrasts, vast neon-lit avenues coexist with narrow *hutongs*.
3. The city has a population of about 13 million.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Hong Kong has developed from a small fishing village in the 1800s into a dynamic and thrilling the 21st century metropolis. The city is filled with impressive high rises, a busy harbor and it is an important financial and economic center.

Hong Kong is a fusion of many cultures. Remnants of its colonial past and the British culture and values involve into the Chinese tradition. Visitors will have no problem getting around Hong Kong. English is widely used throughout the island and almost all the street signs are bilingual.

Questions:

4. What's the origin of Hong Kong?
5. What's the feature of Hong Kong's culture?
6. What language is widely used in Hong Kong?

Task 3

Listen to the passage twice and fill in the blanks with the information about features of the tourist attractions.

Elephant Trunk Hill looks like an elephant drinking water at the confluence of the *Taohua* River and the *Lijiang* River. At a clear night the moon seems to fall on the bottom of the water and at the same time float on the water surface. *Fubo* Mountain to the northeast of downtown *Guilin* by the *Lijiang* River is fantastic: the graceful peak of the mountain is mirrored in the river. On top of the mountain one sees an amazing scenery like a traditional Chinese painting.

The *Mingyue* Peak is the highest peak of *Diecai* Mountain. Tourists can pass the Wind Cave and follow a 140-step stone path to the summit. From the *Nayue* Pavilion one sees the *Lijiang* River down below, surrounding mountain peaks and a whole panorama of *Guilin*. A cave is found in the middle of *Guangming* Mountain in the northwestern suburbs of *Guilin*. Legend has it that the reed growing by the cave's mouth could be made into flutes. Hence the name 'Reed Flute Cave'. The horse hoof-shaped cave has many stalactites (钟乳石), stalagmites (石笋), stone pillars (石柱), stone curtains and stone flowers in numerous forms. The cave is called 'an art palace of mother nature'.

Unit 5

Task 1

Listen to a short passage twice and then fill in the blanks with the missing words.

The Temple of Heaven served *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasty emperors as a vast sacred place (1) to perform ceremonial rites (典礼, 仪式). Prior to the winter solstice (冬至), the emperor would lead a solemn procession, which commoners were forbidden (2) to witness, from the Forbidden City to The Temple of Heaven. At first light on the winter solstice, after a night of fasting and ritual cleansing, the emperor would offer ritual sacrifices and make a report to heaven (3). He would also visit The Temple of Heaven on the 15th day of the first lunar month to pray for (4) a good harvest. The temple was vitally important to the imperial universe as it was considered the link between the emperor and Heaven.

The Temple of Heaven includes a large wooded park (5) that's worth visiting on its own. It incorporates several religious structures, the highlight of which is the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvest. The layout of the compound reflects its religious purpose (6) and so adheres to geometric patterns. For instance, the northern end of the park is curved while the southern end is square (7), reflecting the traditional Chinese conception (8) of heaven as round and the earth as square. Likewise, the park gates are located at the four cardinal points (主要方位: 东、西、南、北).

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

With its handsome buildings, pretty scenery and turbulent (动荡的) history, the Summer Palace is a wonderful place to explore. As long ago as the *Yuan* Dynasty, officials set up their private gardens in the scenic area, but the Summer Palace didn't take on its present appearance until the reign of Emperor *Qianlong* of the *Qing* Dynasty. He deepened the park's man made lake and added buildings to serve as a 'country home' for his mother, though it would be the Empress Dowager (遗孀) *Cixi* who would have the biggest impact on the palace's appearance.

During the Second Opium War in 1860, the Summer Palace was invaded and partially destroyed by French and British forces. In 1886, *Cixi* raised funds to build a modern Chinese navy and the Summer Palace with a marble boat-shaped pavilion and other luxuries throughout the palace. She also gave the palace its current name, *Yiheyuan*, which means the 'Garden for Cultivating Harmony', an ill-fitting (不恰当) name as the Summer Palace would inspire little harmony. China soon paid for her imperial luxury when a modern Japanese fleet destroyed its navy in 1895.

Questions:

1. Who had the biggest impact on the palace's appearance in history?
2. What happened to the Summer Palace during the Second Opium War?
3. Who gave the palace its current name?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Hutongs and quadrangles (四合院) have been the typical features of *Beijing*'s urban landscape since the *Ming* Dynasty. These homes traditionally comprised buildings built around an enclosed courtyard, but many have been subdivided in modern times. The narrowness of the hutongs and of many quadrangles discourages heavy traffic and encourages residents to live their lives on the street, fostering a strong sense of community. The pace of life in these neighborhoods is less hurried than on *Beijing*'s broad modern avenues; the noises less loud. The *hutongs* are like villages within the metropolis. As you wander through them, you may feel as though you have stepped back in time.

Many *hutongs* have disappeared in the past decade to make way for modern apartment buildings and wider roads. Fortunately, some historic neighborhoods are being preserved, as you'll discover if you take a walk described below. Besides winding along some of *Beijing*'s most beautiful *hutongs*, these walks will take you to some of the capital's best sights. We suggest going on foot since this will allow you to soak in the atmosphere, move at your own pace and observe the details that make *hutongs* unique.

Statements:

4. *Hutongs* and quadrangles have been the typical features of *Beijing*'s urban landscape since the *Qing* Dynasty.

5. The *hutongs* are like villages within the metropolis.
6. Many *hutongs* have disappeared in the past decade to make way for modern apartment buildings and wider roads.

Unit 6

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

The 3,000-year-long garden is a chief component of traditional Chinese culture. However, it was during the *Ming* and *Qing* Dynasties that Chinese garden building witnessed its heyday (全盛时期) and the imperial garden the Old Summer Palace was regarded as a masterpiece in this period. Different from the classical European gardens, in which geometric patterns dominate (占优势), Chinese gardens, influenced mainly by the Taoist idea 'the harmony between man and nature', are made to resemble natural landscapes on a smaller scale. In China, there are imperial, private, and landscape gardens represented by *Beihai* Park, the Summer Palace and the Imperial Garden of the Forbidden City in *Beijing*; Lion Grove, the Lingerin Garden, and the Humble Administrator's Garden in *Suzhou* and the ten West Lake scenes in *Hangzhou* respectively.

Questions:

1. What is the Taoist idea that influenced Chinese gardens?
2. How many kinds of gardens are there in China? What are they?
3. Can you name some of the representative Chinese gardens?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Most private gardens were built in the south, especially in cities south of the Yangtze River. In almost every garden, there is a large space set in a landscape of artistically arranged rockeries, ponds (1), pavilions, bridges, trees, and flowers. Surrounding the beautiful scene are small open areas separated (2) by corridors or walls with lattice windows (漏窗) or beautifully shaped doors. Buildings in the garden were used for receiving guests, holding banquets, reading, or writing poetry (3). They are open on all sides and are often situated near the water. The winding corridors connect various buildings and also provide a covered veranda as shelter from the rain (4) and shade from the sun (5).

Suzhou, known as the home of gardens, displays (6) the most and the best traditional private gardens in China. Gardens in *Yangzhou* are characterized by their architectural style (7) and artistic rockeries, whereas *Guangdong* gardens are distinguished by large ponds, brightly colored buildings, and luxuriant plants (8).

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Most imperial gardens are located in north China: *Beihai* Park; the Summer Palace; the Imperial Garden of the Forbidden City in *Beijing*; the Imperial Summer Resort in *Chengde*, *Hebei* Province; and *Huaqing* Pool in *Xi'an*, *Shanxi* Province. Imperial gardens occupy large areas. The Summer Palace, for instance, has an area of 290 hectares while the Imperial Summer Resort in *Chengde*, which covers more than 560 hectares, is the largest imperial garden in China. Most of these gardens have three sections which serve administrative, residential, and recreational purposes. In large imperial gardens, the main buildings are connected by an imaginary line in the middle of the garden on a north-south axis. Other buildings scattered among hills and waters are linked by imaginary lines, forming a well-designed symmetry (对称) and adding beauty to the chief architectural complex.

Other characteristics of the imperial gardens are colored paintings, screen walls, stone tablets, bridges, man-made hills and lakes, and ingeniously-designed (设计巧妙的) buildings. Decorated archways abound in those gardens.

Statements:

4. Most imperial gardens are located in south China.
5. Imperial gardens occupy small space.
6. Most of these gardens have three sections which serve administrative, residential, and recreational purposes.
7. The imperial gardens are designed according to geometry principles.

Unit 7

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Tourists to China should seek signs of religions and its humanism in the Chinese society in general. They may find the sacred in the common courtesy, the kindness, and the tenderness of the Chinese people. They may find the divine in the interpersonal relationships over generations, in respect for the aged and the care of the young within the family. Although more and more places of worship in the usual sense have come into being here and there, religion in China remains, as always, more down to earth than ceremonial.

Questions:

1. What should tourists to China seek?
2. Where could they find the sacred?
3. Is religion in China more down to earth than ceremonial?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Buddhism is said to be founded in India in 6 B.C. (1) by Siddhartha Gautama (known by the titles Sakyamuni and Tathagata), the son of a nobleman and member of the Kshatriya caste near the present borders (2) of India and Nepal. Around A.D. 67 (3), it was formally introduced into China, and later localized. There are two types (4) of Buddhism in China: Mahayana (Big Raft) Buddhism that, mainly, the *Han* people believe in and Hinayana (little Raft) Buddhism that some ethnic minorities (少数民族) in *Yunnan* Province as the *Dai*, *Blang*, *Achang* and *De'ang* believe in. Under the two types are numerous sects (教派), which share (5) the same basic principles of the religion.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

The Four Noble Truths in Buddhism are: First, that sorrow is the universal experience of mankind, and everyone is subjected to the torture (折磨) of birth, sickness, aging and death; Second, that the cause of sorrow is desire; Third, that the removal of sorrow, i.e. the achievement of happiness, can only come from the removal of desire; and fourth, that desire can be systematically abandoned if one follows The Noble Eight-Fold Path (八正道): Right Knowledge, Right Aspiration, Right Speech, Right Behavior, Right Livelihood, Right Effort, Right Mindfulness and Right Absorption (正见、正思维、正语、正业、正命、正精神、正念、正进步). By following the Noble Eight-Fold Path, the Buddhist aims to attain 'nirvana' (涅槃), a condition beyond the limits of mind, thoughts, feelings, desire, the will, and a state of bliss (极乐).

Statements:

4. According to Buddhism, everyone will experience all sorts of sorrow in his life.
5. The achievement of happiness comes from the desire.
6. Desire can be systematically abandoned if one follows the Noble Four- Fold Path.
7. The Buddhist aims to attain 'nirvana' that is a state of supreme spirit.

Unit 8

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

China is a large country with 56 nationalities. Because of the differences in living environments, history and customs (1), characteristic festivals are held by the ethnic minorities besides the Spring Festival, and Mid-autumn Festival (2) that the *Han* Chinese celebrate (3). All these traditional ethnic minority festivals are regarded as indispensable (必不可少的) components of the minorities' customs.

It is estimated that more than 1,200 (4) of the 1,700 Chinese festivals are ethnic minorities' festivals. Each festival is based on its own origin or legend (5), and a single festival can also have

different origins. Some of these festivals are related to religions and beliefs (6), such as the Corban Festival and *Kaizhai* Festival, whereas others are linked to entertainment (7) activities, such as the Nadam Fair of Mongolia and the Tibetan New Year.

Some of the ethnic minority festivals are so grand and influential that they attract spectators (8) from far away.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

China, a large country with 1.3 billion people boasts a long history and glorious culture. Festivals in particular, embody Chinese culture on the one hand and enrich people's lives greatly on the other.

Because of China's very ancient history, her festivals are numerous. They can be divided into many categories, of which the following are the four major ones: Traditional Festivals are a reflection of the Chinese traditional practices and morality of the people; National Holidays are those designated as such by the Chinese government to commemorate some special events; Ethnic Minority Festivals are unique to the Chinese minority ethnic groups; and the tourism festivals are associated with renowned Chinese scenic spots. No matter what the kind of festival, it is a window through which Chinese culture can be seen vividly and thoroughly.

Questions:

1. What's the function of festivals?
2. How many categories of festivals are there in China?
3. Name some traditional festivals.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

The festivities reach their climax around the New Year's Eve and the New Year's Day, when there are continuous feasting and rejoicing amid the din of gong striking, drum beating and firecracker shooting. While grown-ups occupy themselves with New Year dinner parties and mutual greetings, children enjoy the New Year entertainment such as fireworks and lantern displays, lion dance and other folk shows, visits to festival fairs, etc. Nothing is spared to make the celebrations joyous and memorable.

Statements:

4. The festivities reach their climax before the New Year's Eve and the New Year's Day.
5. Grown-ups occupy themselves with New Year shopping.
6. Children enjoy the New Year entertainment.

Unit 9

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

Celebrated for its special characteristics of the old town and breathtaking (壮观的) natural scenery, *Lijiang* is so enchanting due to (1) the 1,000-year small bridges, swift canals, cobbled streets and grey tiled roofs as well as the ancient legacy (2) of the *Naxi* ethnic group. The tour package (3) offers a leisurely trip during which you visit Jade Dragon Snow Mountain, Tiger Leaping Gorge, Baisha Village, and a Local *Naxi* Family. Special highlights (4) include an enjoyable *Naxi* music performance and an opportunity to see precious (5) murals (壁画) .

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Lhasa is the capital of Tibet, which has a unique natural environment, a long history, a magnificent plateau scenery and rich ethnic folklore. Lhasa is also called 'City of Sunshine' due to the sunny days all year round. The word Lhasa in Tibetan means 'a sacred land' or 'a paradise'.

Once in Lhasa, the first thing that comes into your view will be the imposing and magnificent Potala Palace located on the Red Hill.

Questions:

1. Where's the capital of Tibet?
2. What does the word Lhasa mean in Tibetan?
3. Where is the Potala Palace ?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

As the most Westernized city in China after Hong Kong, *Shanghai* is on the cutting edge of China's race for modernization. Almost a quarter of the world's construction cranes stand in this city of 15 million. On the other hand, architectural remnants of a strong colonial past survive along the charming, winding, bustling streets that make this city undeniably Chinese. It isn't an ancient Chinese city with loads of historic temples and ruins to visit. It's both old and young city more akin to Hong Kong than *Beijing*. The street scene and on-the-go atmosphere reflect China's future more than its past.

Statements:

4. *Shanghai* is on the cutting edge of China's race for modernization.
5. It is an ancient Chinese city with loads of historic temples and ruins to visit.
6. It's both old and young city more akin to Hong Kong than *Beijing*.

Unit 10

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

In China, a massage isn't an indulgence (嗜好); it's what the doctor orders. According to the principle of traditional Chinese medicine (1), massage can help the body's qi, or energy, flow freely and remain in balance (2). Of course, where you choose to have your massage can tip the scale toward indulgence. Around *Shanghai* are hundreds of blind massage parlors (按摩院), inexpensive salons (3) whose blind masseurs treat your body's soft and sore (4) spots. At the other end of the range lie the hotel spas, luxurious retreats (静修) where indulgence is respectable. Here are just a few of the massage outlets (5) in *Shanghai* that can attend to your needs.

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Popular with the older generation, Chinese opera can be difficult to follow. However, it's an important part of Chinese culture and the costumes and makeup are fantastic. There are different forms of Chinese opera including *Kunju*, *Yueju*, and, probably the most well known Peking (*Beijing*) Opera. In *Shanghai*, *Yueju* Opera is very popular. Classics include *Butterfly Lovers*, a *Romeo and Juliet*-style tale, and *A Dream of Red Mansions* based on the classic *Qing* Dynasty novel by *Cao Xueqin* about the fate of a feudal family. Join the weekend crowd at the *Yifu* Theatre.

Statements:

1. Chinese opera is an important part of Chinese culture.
2. The costumes and performance of Chinese opera are fantastic.
3. The most well known form of Chinese opera is *Yueju* Opera.
4. In *Shanghai*, Peking(*Beijing*)Opera is very popular.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

China, a mysterious land of red pagodas, cosmopolitan cities, classical gardens, and Great Walls, is yours to explore on this 12-day tour. Start in *Beijing* where you explore *Tian'anmen* Square, the Forbidden City and the Great Wall. Continuing on to *Xi'an*, strategically set on the Silk Road trade route that once linked central Asia to Europe, you will see the amazing Terracotta Warriors, an army that guarded the tomb of *Qin Shihuang*. You have two days to explore this historical city, the largest in the world during the *Tang* Dynasty.

Questions:

5. Which city is the first to visit in China?
6. What could you explore in *Beijing*?
7. What will you see in historical city *Xi'an*?

Unit 11

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

There are many exotic and unusual things to buy in China which make wonderful souvenirs and gifts for relatives (1) and friends back home. The following is a sample of the amazing range of goods available (2).

Silk: Chinese silk is famous all over the world for its magnificent quality, color and variety (3). Silk products from *Hangzhou* and *Suzhou* are particularly good.

Tea: There are hundreds of varieties of Chinese tea. They can be classified into five categories (4) — green tea, black tea, brick tea, scented tea, and oolong tea.

Antiques: If you're an antique enthusiast (爱好者), China is the place for you! Fascinating antique shops and markets are to be found (5) in most cities and towns. A word of warning (6): when buying expensive items, ensure that the item carries the official red seal (7) of the shop and the sale documents are in order. Chinese law forbids the export of antiques dated earlier than 1795 (8).

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Arts and crafts products make ideal souvenirs and gifts. These include bronze ware, cloisonne, folk toys, jade, kites, lacquer wares, paper-cutting, porcelain, pottery, seal, prints and scrolls, silk, embroidery and printed and dyed fabrics. Cloisonne made in *Beijing*, porcelain made in *Jingdezhen* in *Jiangxi*, embroidery from *Suzhou*, *Hunan*, *Guangdong* and *Sichuan*, *Tang* tri-color pottery horses and camels, and batik from *Guizhou* and *Yunnan* are all highly recommended.

The 'our treasures of study'— namely writing brush, ink stick, ink slab, paper—play an important part in Chinese culture. You may want a set for your own study or to give as a unique gift to your friends. The best writing materials are said to be *Xuan* paper and *Hui* ink stick from *Anhui*, *Duan* ink slab from *Guangdong* and *Hu* writing brush from *Zhejiang*.

Questions:

1. What makes ideal souvenirs and gifts?
2. What are the 'four treasures of study'?
3. What are the best writing materials?

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Hong Kong is complex. On the surface it seems that every building is a sculpture of glass and steel and every pedestrian is hurrying to a meeting. But look past the shiny new surfaces against the ancient culture gives the city an exotic flavor and its citizens a unique outlook.

Questions:

4. What does Hong Kong look like on the surface?
5. What gives the city an exotic flavor?

Unit 12

Task 1

Listen to the recording twice and answer the following questions.

Attention please. We are going to check out early tomorrow morning. Would you please have your bags ready by 9:30 this evening, and leave them right outside the door? Mr. Smith and I will be there together to check the luggage. Remember to put your travel document in your carry-on baggage. For tomorrow morning, I have arranged an early morning call for you. It's at 7:00 a.m. breakfast will be served at 7:30 a.m. in the dining hall. Since the departure time of the flight is 10:15 a.m., we have to set off at 8:00 a.m. to allow enough time for check-in.

Questions:

1. When should you get your bags ready?
2. Where should you put your travel document?
3. What is the departure time of the flight according to the passage?

Task 2

Listen to the recording twice and decide whether the following statements are true or false.

Beijing is one of China's three major international hubs, along with *Shanghai* and Hong Kong. You can catch a nonstop flight here from New York, Chicago, Sydney, Los Angeles, and London. Note that Air China is the only operator that runs nonstop Los Angeles and London flights. Otherwise flights from Los Angeles generally stop in Tokyo, Seoul, Hong Kong, or Vancouver, taking between 17 and 25 hours. Though most airlines say that reconfirming your return flight is unnecessary, some local airlines cancel your seat if you don't reconfirm. Play it safe: check with your airline beforehand.

Statements:

4. *Beijing* is one of China's three major international hubs, along with *Shanghai* and Hong Kong.
5. Air China is not the only operator that runs nonstop Los Angeles and London flights.
6. Play it safe: check with your airline beforehand.

Task 3

Listen to the recording twice and fill in the blanks with the missing words.

The efficient *Beijing* Capital International Airport(PEK)is 27 km (1) northeast of the city center. There are two terminals (2), connected by a walkway. China Southern's domestic flights operate out of Terminal 1; all other airlines out of Terminal 2. If you can't find your flight on the departure board (3) when you arrive, check that you're in the correct terminal.

Beijing's airport tax (4) (known as the 'airport construction fee') is RMB90 for international flights and RMB50 (5) for domestic. You pay before check-in by purchasing a coupon from the booths inside the terminal, which is then collected (6) at the entrance to the main departure hall.

Clearing customs and immigration can take a while, especially in the morning, so make sure you arrive at least two hours before your scheduled flight time (7).

Both Chinese and Western-style fast-food outlets (经销店) abound—Starbucks and KFC are just two names you'll recognize. Most are open from around 7 a.m. to 11 p.m. Prices for even a soft drink vary (8) wildly from place to place.

Appendix C

参考译文（部分）

注：全部译文请到“华信教育资源网（www.hauxin.edu.cn）”免费下载。

第1单元

课文A 随团旅游

随着生活水平的提高，工作时间的缩短以及假期增长，越来越多的人能够到名胜古迹去观光度假了。就假日旅行来说，有不同的旅行方式：随团旅游、自驾游和背包徒步游。决定去旅行是一回事，但组织安排旅行却是另外一码事。许多人没有时间或兴趣为自己设计旅程。他们宁愿别人替他们做出决定和安排，因此出现了随团旅游。在预定价格内，旅游为旅游者提供预先安排好的交通、食宿及其他度假准备工作。

有组织的团队旅游的先驱是来自英格兰的浸礼会教徒托马斯·库克。他于1841年租了一列火车运送570人去参加禁酒大会。这次团队旅行的几大特点，成为后来的随团旅游的标准，这些特点包括交通、饮食、娱乐、偶然事件、旅游团陪同。

随团旅游是由不同供应商提供的几个旅行要素的组合，该组合作为一个单一商品以单一价格卖给消费者。随团旅行一般包括以下两个或三个要素：一种或多种交通形式（包括乘坐飞机—驾车、乘坐飞机—游轮、汽车—长途客车游以及乘坐火车随团游）；住宿；饮食；旅游景点和事件（包括观光和进入自然和商业景点、技艺表演、娱乐休闲和各种特殊活动）；额外收费项目（包括换乘和行李管理、小费给予和纳税、专业旅游经理和导游的服务、旅行袋、饭店和商店的优惠券）。

随团旅游业是旅游产业中发展迅速的领域之一。随团旅游为什么变得如此普及、受欢迎呢？主要是它们提供了独立旅行所不具备的许多好处。首先旅游者在买到随团旅游的同时，也买到了心灵的平静。随团旅游消除了旅行中的忧虑，因为一切都由旅游代理商事先安排好了。人们不用担心错过著名的旅游景点，给他们安排的导游有经验，知道哪些景点值得游览。而且，导游会对景点的历史加以讲解，使得游客更好地欣赏美景。其次，随团旅游最吸引人之处是相对低廉的价格。所有的随团旅游都是预先支付的，游客能事先比较精确地算出旅行的全部费用。另外，随团旅游游客不用花时间寻找住处、安排换乘或购买演出门票。

总之，随团旅游消除了旅行中的一些烦恼，同时又能节约开销、省时，加上日益繁荣的经济与低廉的机票使得一年里只有短短几个星期假期的普通人能够到海外去旅游。跨国旅游不再是少数有钱人专有的特权。

课文B 暑假

彼得·休兹谈到了自从1963年以来我们的视野是如何扩大的、世界是如何缩小的。

早在 1963 年英国的一个流行歌手克利夫·理查德就唱到“我们大家都在度假”，但是他和他的伴奏者们从未想到过能够到比前南斯拉夫还远的地方去远游。在影片《暑假》中他们买了一辆伦敦巴士并驾车在欧洲进行了探险。

当时的随团度假线路仅限于到哥斯达布拉沃、帕耳马岛、奥地利或意大利。度假者乘坐的如果是 Lockheed Constellation 公司制造的活塞驱动的飞机，在马约卡岛逗留 15 天需要花费 40 基尼。

那时的随团度假很少有短于两周的。这是因为政府不允许使用包机的旅游代理商以低于飞往同一地点的定期航线往返机票的价格出售一条度假线路。因此，能够到国外度假的人数有限。

大众旅游有了爆炸性的发展。在 1963 年大约有 25 万人随团度假；而在 1992 年就有 1000 万人。当然社会经济日益繁荣使旅游业发展成为可能，但是对其有重大影响的还是政治和科技。以澳大利亚为例，在 1963 年你若到那里去旅游要花掉你毕生的积蓄。然而，现在你到悉尼进行为期两周的旅游并住宿在四星级宾馆，只需花一小部分钱。

政治与科技的结合使得大堡礁和悉尼港之旅成为可能。多年来国有航空公司反对任何来自包机的竞争，但是，由于澳大利亚经济衰退而 200 周年庆典活动的成功举行，旅游业的年收入越来越诱人。因此，政客们改变了观念，于 1988 年开始实行包机。

新技术在于飞机本身。有两个发动机的波音 767 喷气式飞机航程之远与价格经济使得全部远程运输被纳入随团旅游领域。多亏了新式飞机，泰国、印度、墨西哥、东非、美国和加勒比海才能在大量的市场宣传手册中占有一席之地。

更加强势的政治已经打开了世界许多地方的大门。若是在 30 年前最富有冒险精神的人即使被允许都会犹豫不决是否前往这些地方。现在有几家国际航班飞往胡志明市（前西贡），游客可以钻一钻已经为身材宽大的西方人拓宽的越共的秘密地道。中国现在欢迎游客游览紫禁城，畅游长江，赞叹西安兵马俑的壮观。

至于东部欧洲，俄罗斯人希望有更多的游客到他们那里去。而在捷克，数百万的观光客徜徉在布拉格如童话故事般的街道中。在这些城市里，古建筑遗产被完整地保存下来。圣彼得堡犹如彼得大帝时代一样；布拉格依旧是莫扎特所熟悉的模样。

第 2 单元

课文A 欢迎辞

女士们、先生们：

下午好！

我们非常荣幸地欢迎你们从世界各地来到上海。首先让我介绍一下我们团队成员。张先生是一个经验丰富的司机，请大家放心乘车。李女士是新毕业的大学生，是实习导游。我叫刘洪，你们可以叫我刘，是我的姓。我们来自中国国际旅行社上海分社。中国人素有热情好客的传统。我们希望客人们能够像在家里一样轻松自在，我们尽力提供最好的服务，使大家的中国之旅成为一个美好的回忆。

对于你们，尊敬的客人，上海有许多事物既可怕又可益智，供你们休闲娱乐。

上海是中国的发动机。我相信你们不会失去了解在这片充满希望的土地上的生机与繁荣的机会。在今后的几天里我们安排了囊括上海所有主要景点的旅行路线。我们为那些对中国

文化遗产感兴趣的游客，组织了关于太极、中国茶道和少林功夫的特别节目。

你们将入住香格里拉饭店——一个豪华的五星级饭店。从饭店到各个景点很方便。大家要在这逗留几天，最好记住我们的巴士车牌号。号码是 84176。我再重复一遍 84176。

从旧金山飞往上海的航班把大家从西半球带到东半球。两座城市的时差是 16 个小时。请把手表调到北京时间下午 3 点 15 分。尽管中国跨越五个时区，全国以北京时间为标准时间。

女士们、先生们，作为 2010 年世界博览会的主办城市，上海为您服务。祝愿大家此行硕果累累。

谢谢。

第 3 单元

课文A 中国饮食

中国的特点是领土广袤，少数民族众多，气候条件不同，地理环境存在差异。甚至连占中国人口多数的汉族，由于历史文化背景和地理位置不同，也有着不同的风俗和方言。很自然，不同地方的饮食风味也有所不同：有些地方喜欢酸味食物，有些则喜欢甜味食物。各地的特色菜兴盛起来，逐渐演变成所谓的“八大菜系”。

食物中有大葱和一些有营养的材料，如爆炒大葱和海参。还有辣味菜，如辣椒蒜味肉片，或者有甜酸口味的汤，如清蒸西鲱鱼。其他名菜还包括既鲜嫩又有营养的菜，如烤乳猪。

中国人喜欢把美食和节假日联系在一起。饮食文化最有趣的是在各种场合举办的宴席，包括节日、生日、婚礼和葬礼。在阴历新年（春节），汉族人通常吃饺子，其形状如元宝，代表好运。春节期间也有吃春饼、八珍年糕和八宝粥的。在剧场和庙会有舞狮子、杂技表演和各种传统美食。其他民族也有各自独特的娱乐活动和节日食品，如满族人吃烤饼，回族人吃油炸糕，壮族人吃包在竹叶里的金字塔形糯米饺，维吾尔族人吃手抓羊肉米团。

第 4 单元

课文A 上海

你一定已经听说过或读过许多关于上海如何快速发展和实现现代化的文章。许多人认为上海已经可以与香港、新加坡相匹敌成为像纽约一样的东方国际都市。上海确实是一个海外游客见证中国现代化进程的窗口。上海发生了惊人的变化。

作为新中国的一个中心，上海因其繁荣、交通设施便捷、中西文化交汇处、来自全国与世界各地的丰富多彩的舞台表演、不同风味菜系的汇集而闻名世界。像火箭一样的东方明珠电视塔、外滩、南京路、玉佛寺、著名的和平饭店、人民广场、豫园都是上海现代或历史的标志。请带着相机来记录发生在这片神奇土地上的永不停息的传说吧。

● 上海旅游景点

外滩夜景

外滩，是上海的象征。对欧洲人来说，它是上海的华尔街，是人们进行狂热贸易的地方，是发财梦想成真与希望破灭的地方。

豫园

豫园是著名的古典植物园。始建于 1559 年，1577 年竣工，豫园是中国南方最著名的园林之一。虽然很小，占地面积只有 20,000 平方米，豫园却有 30 多处风景如画的迷人景点可供游览。

东方明珠电视塔

塔里面收藏有 120,000 多件珍贵艺术品。当你登上东方明珠电视塔，俯瞰到城市全景，就会对这个大都市惊叹不已。

玉佛寺

这是上海的一个有 100 多年历史的著名寺院，其建筑布局精致、和谐，显得宏伟壮观。

课文B 长城

长城，同埃及金字塔、印度泰姬陵和巴比伦空中花园一样，是世界伟大奇迹之一。

如同地球上的大部分重大的人造工程一样，中国的长城是 2,500 年前建造的，全长 6,000 多千米，是古代中国最壮观的建筑和防御工事之一。长城也是宇航员在月球上能够看到的地球上的两个建筑之一。中国有一句古语：“不到长城非好汉”，只有站在长城上，你才能真正体验到中国的广袤和中华精神的精髓。

长城始建于公元前 7 世纪。周朝时期的北方各诸侯国为防御而修筑长城。秦始皇在公元前 221 年统一中国之后，把各个长城连接起来以抵御来自北部匈奴部落的入侵，并新修筑了 5,000 千米长城。

自秦代以后，各个朝代不断地修缮长城。最主要的一次修缮是 1368 年明朝建立之初，历时 200 多年才完成。我们今天所看到的几乎就是这次修建的结果。长城全长有 6,000 多公里，西至甘肃嘉峪关，东至辽宁鸭绿江河口。

第 5 单元

课文A 中国古建筑

对大部分来中国的游客来说，观光意味着每天都会遇到各种中国式建筑，从寺庙到园林、古墓、佛塔、皇宫到民居。

北京紫禁城最完美地表现出宫廷建筑的各种元素。像太和殿、中和殿、保和殿三大殿这样宏伟的建筑沿着中轴线均匀排列。大殿朝南矗立在台基上，代表着封建王朝皇帝至高无上的权力和权威。帝王与后妃们的寝宫在紫禁城的后部。在各个大殿的外围处有众多小型宫殿，里面有太监和妃子们忙着争权夺利。

在紫禁城的南面是天坛，是外国人称为宗教性建筑的范例，因为皇帝每年都要到这来祭拜两次，一是感谢今年上天赐予丰收，二是为来年的丰收而祈福。修建时没有使用一根钉子，39 米高的祈年殿有三重屋顶，瓦为深蓝色，代表天的颜色。屋顶由 28 根柱子支撑，其中最大的 4 根代表四季。由 12 根柱子组成的两个圈分别代表 12 个月和中国对一天时间的传统划分方法，即 12 个时辰，每一时辰 2 小时。

来游览中国建筑的游客一定会注意到除了使用砖瓦外还大量地使用木材作为建筑材料。这是因为木材不仅丰富、容易运输而且非常实用。大柱子能够撑起屋顶，木材易于雕刻，而起到装饰作用。总之，对建筑的精雕细琢，谁能不惊叹呢？

佛塔是中国风景的一部分，就像教堂是英国的一部分一样。或高或矮、或沉重或轻细，佛塔点缀着中国的风景，是佛教对中国文化的影响并与之融为一体的见证。现存最古老的木塔，位于山西北部的应县。塔高 67.13 米，900 年来历经包括强地震在内的各种变迁而被保存下来，简直就是一个奇迹。由于地处偏远，大多数游客都没有看到过这座塔。人们经常游览的往往是以下几处：西安的大雁塔、杭州的六和塔、地处中原的河南省嵩山少林寺塔林等。

中国建筑的显著特点是什么呢？是厚重的坡屋顶、大量使用木材、台基、梁托结构和令人眼花缭乱的彩色装饰的组合。

寺庙宫殿的屋顶与通常比较宏大的建筑来说显得非常轻盈。屋檐常常向上微微翘起，整个屋顶好像悬浮在建筑上，仿佛由看不见的柱子支撑着。另一种可以产生类似漂浮效果的方法是采用双重屋顶。这种屋顶分两个阶段修建，一段矮墙把双重屋顶分开，看上去就像还有一个小层。向上翘起的屋檐的实用功能是保证建筑里面的光照，同时也易于雨水的排泄。另外，宫殿的殿顶都铺有琉璃瓦。由于皇家的颜色是黄色，那些皇宫也建成黄色的。

中国的建筑，无论是寺庙、宫殿还是佛塔，无一例外地建在台基上。原本就应该如此修建，因为是木结构，不管怎么能够适应环境，也要防止雨水侵蚀。然而古书上说的“天覆地载”，讲的是一个有关宇宙的象征意义。按照这种说法，台基代表地，屋顶代表天。因此我们回到中国古代哲学反复出现的主题思想，即天人合一。

任何对中国古建筑的讨论都会提到梁托结构，否则就不完整。梁托结构是几个世纪以来中国工匠发展起来的，是中国建筑的基本形式或风格，是中华民族的骄傲，也为外国人所敬佩。尽管大柱和横梁符合结构要求，但是通常不使用胶水或钉子，梁托和托架艺术地结合成一个令人难以置信的复杂而样式奇特的结构来支撑屋顶。这些梁托体系也暗示了房子主人的社会地位，因为普通百姓是不允许使用的，它们是上层社会的特权。

中国古建筑的装饰主要有两种类型：彩绘和雕饰。前者具有装饰、象征或保护作用。一个典型的例子是北京颐和园里的长廊。在建筑里面或外面的装饰性的雕塑多种多样，有墙壁上的砖雕、栏杆上的石雕，也有放在殿顶或寺庙屋脊上的神话传说的小型兽雕，还有放置在陵墓前的巨大的人和兽的雕塑。例如，保和殿前台基上有精雕细刻龙凤图案的重达 200 吨的石雕。

课文B 兵马俑

2000 多年以前，陕西省是中国的文化、经济、政治中心。它的城市，包括西安，是 13 朝古都。该地区虽然地域面积相对较小，但是在几十年前就已经有许多著名景点，现如今西安最先为人所知和最重要的就是兵马俑。

兵马俑被列为世界八大奇迹之一，包括如真人般大小的 7000 多兵和马，在秦始皇陵墓附近被挖掘出土。陵墓是夯土冢，高出地面 154 尺。在 1974 年，距离陵墓东一里处发现三个大型兵马俑坑。这次共挖掘出 7000 多陶俑、铜车、陶马和兵器。三个陪葬坑被发现。一号坑设有战车和步兵组成的长方形军阵；二号坑是战车、步兵、骑兵组成的曲尺形军阵；三号坑用做指挥部。秦始皇陵墓兵马俑博物馆是中国十大名胜之一，被联合国教科文组织列为世界文化遗产。

第6单元

课文A 中国园林

早在公元6世纪,日本就了解中国园林,而欧洲人通过在元代曾经游览过许多中国南方宋代园林的马可波罗才了解到中国园林风格。公元17世纪中国园林被介绍到英国,然后从英国传到法国和整个欧洲。在18世纪晚期,中国园林对欧洲的罗马运动产生巨大影响,欧洲的园林从僵硬呆板的贵族风格转变为更加自然的中国式园林风格。

由于东西方在哲学与审美方面存在差异,因此西方与东方的园林在形式与风格方面都有所不同。在形式方面,西方园林用对称、规则和编排紧密的布局来体现人文美。几何学无处不在,因为鲜花、植物被修剪的竖直整齐。将植物、树木和建筑设计成一种自然形式,中国园林不要求对称或固定规则。然而,西方园林理论目标是要矫正自然缺陷,中国园林通过修建假山和池塘而呈现出充满诗情画意的特质,从而使植物与建筑融合成为一个完整的有机体。为了充分地欣赏中国园林美,理解景致所蕴涵的哲学非常重要。

中国园林的起源与发展

中国园林有4,000多年的历史,最早的园林出现在公元前2000年的商代。商代的国王们把森林与群山当做猎与观光之地。中国园林就从这种园林雏形孕育发展起来的。

最初的园林在古代中国是帝王与贵族地位的象征。最突出的特点是占地面积大而且有双重用途,狩猎与祭神。

园林的魅力逐渐地扩大,吸引了贵族以外的官员、诗人、画家和商人,他们希望能够在家里再现曾经看到的美景。早期的私家园林都很小,特点是用石头堆成山,水渠旁通常栽上松柏和竹子。这些园林再现了自然景色而被命名为“山水园林”。

唐代的富裕促进了园林建设。御花园建在长安,也就是今天的西安,最大御花园为禁园。这座园林有14千米宽,12千米长,里面有24个花园和建筑群。它是主要的休闲去处,里面有景点,也有各种娱乐活动,如狩猎、唱歌、跳舞。

在唐代,山水画成为中国画的一个独立分支。山水、树木、村庄是很流行的主题。画家们通过作画表达人与自然的和谐。画家们不仅画风景,而且用画来表达思想和情感。园林建设也是如此。园林设计者试图使建筑美与自然美和谐统一,从而游览者可以看到完美的图景。

在宋代,园林更加风行而且流传到下层社会。茶坊的主人开始修建园林以招揽顾客,这样平民百姓也可以欣赏园林美景了。此时山水绘画对园林的影响比以前更大。比如,皇帝会雇用画工画一个设计图,然后根据图纸来建造园林。更加注重院落的线条、结构和装饰的细节,尤其注意小型装饰物的置放。

中国园林到明清时期达到了黄金时代,成为一门融音乐、绘画、诗歌和建筑于一体的艺术。园林开始彼此影响,而设计者们也相互参照以获取灵感。园林数量急剧增长,其中有许多是私家园林,其中经典的有拙政园、网师园和个园。如圆明园、颐和园等御花园开始模仿和借鉴私家园林的理念。

中国园林的分类

按照地理位置划分

北方园林规模大且有宏伟建筑。由于北方气候、水域或常青树木种类不多,故不如南方园林那样优雅。北方园林主要在北京、西安、洛阳和开封,北京的园林最能代表北方风格。

南方园林比北方园林占地面积小，但是水景和常青树种类多，景致优雅而舒适，主要在南京、上海、无锡、苏州、杭州和扬州，而苏州的园林是最佳的典范。南方园林的设计艺术包括建筑、山、河流和植物。这些园林把自然、建筑和绘画融为一体。

广东地处亚热带，因此广东园林特点是有较多的水景、草木，而且有亚热带景观和高大宽阔的建筑。

按照园林所有者来划分

御花园高大宏伟，利用自然山水修建。最著名的包括建于汉代的上林禁苑和唐代在西安修建的禁园。近代的御花园有清代修建于北京的北海公园、颐和园和圆明园以及承德避暑山庄等范例。这些园林凸显了中国不同地区的风景，将神与传说的主题和著名历史人物的轶事融合在一起，还特别注重园内独立景点之间的联系。

私家园林相对来说山水较小因而规模也小。大部分只有 1 公顷，极少数有 4、5 公顷。在这样有限的空间里，特别注意把小型建筑、人造山水和草木与装饰融合在一起。园林的主题因主人的品味不同而不同。有的表现出主人的正直与率真的性格，有的反映出主人追求平淡朴素的生活。苏州、扬州和南京的私家园林被认为是中国园林中最著名的，而苏州则是这些园林中大部分园林的典范。

课文B 中国园林特点

虽然中国园林种类繁多而且每个园林都各有特色，但是中国园林都有一些共同的特点。

对诗意美和艺术理想的追求使得中国园林与诗歌、绘画紧密相连。园林创作同绘画创作相互关联，两者都追求诗意，试图在园林当中再现诗与画。在山水的设计当中可以看到这些特点。园林中的建筑设计极其细腻，每个园林都有各自主题内容，大部分都来自著名诗词而且具有山水画的布局。总体来说，园林遵循艺术原则，追求空间与自然景致的和谐。

园林利用景色来表达设计者的情感，激发游客的联想。对情感的艺术表达是艺术的一个基本主题，中国园林也不例外。因为园林是在艺术背景下对自然的再现，创作园林的过程需要有想象力和创新能力。首先，山水的创造需要使用石头和沟渠，而两者的相互依存产生强烈的效果。其次，为了使园林与自然产生联系取一个吉利的名字是很重要的。名字被刻在石板上、门柱对联和门板上。这些方法有助于为游客描绘出一幅图画，为园林创造一种氛围。

在有限的地方创造出一种空间感是很重要的，尤其是在小型的私人园林中。为了多造景，设计者们堆山、修渠、植树、种花和养鱼。通过利用对比、遮挡视线和曲径的方法，特定的景致可以有不同的风景和角度。这些措施可以使得在小花园中的不同地点看到全新的风景，因此产生一种更加自由的空间感。有些方法包括使河岸边点缀一些不规则的石头，根据不同季节种上花木，改变走廊的长度，使用装饰性的窗户和门。细心的观察者会注意到在苏州园林里，如果一扇窗户面对一堵白墙，那么在这个框架内就没有假山或草木。这种设计是为了创造一种探幽的氛围，在空野地中没有风景，从不同的角度会有不同的感受。

园林从周围环境中借景。中国园林强调在园林里面和外面的景致要按照适当的比例排列。例如在扬州的个园里，有一座避暑山，山上有个亭子。在亭子里，可以看到远处的瘦西湖。在无锡，寄畅园借西山上的塔作为背景来凸显园林里面的景致。

中国园林的设计已经演变成一个独立的技巧而且总是包括四个基本特点。

山景

山是形成园林景观的最重要的特点。在汉武帝统治时期，当工匠们修池塘时，把挖出的

土堆成一个小岛。这样的小岛就是人造山的早期实例。后来的园林设计者们，不再仅仅复制山的大小，而是强调细节的重要性，从而使得人造山更像真山。从唐宋时期开始，随着山水画的发展，山水园艺家们开始更加注意建造技巧。

水景

水景是园林的重要景致特点之一。在园林中水景可以是静止的湖也可以是动态的瀑布。共有三种方式来建造人工水景。

植被

用茂盛的草覆盖水堤，在岸上修建建筑物。建筑物通常矗立在水上以便营造出一种水来自建筑结构下面的景象。沿河的植物和草地使人平和宁静。

中国园林的内涵

中国传统思想认为人类只是无限宇宙中渺小的一部分。每个生灵都是自然的一部分，人与自然的内在联系是不可分割的。中国园林努力在花园里模仿自然，不割断这种根本的联系与自然保持一致。园林的每个部分都强调和提醒游客人与自然的和谐，目的是培养人格与情感之间的和谐。

御花园代表皇帝的至高无上的权力，但也是休闲的地方。私家园林是休闲与冥思的地方，是人们渴望回归自然的一个圣所。无论是地理位置还是规模大小，中国园林代表一种传统，通过求助自然以便找到世界内部的和谐。

第7单元

(略)

第8单元

课文A 中国传统节日

春节

中国最重要的节日是新年，在中国称为春节。春节迎来农历新年，是西方的圣诞节与新年除夕夜合二为一。这一整天，整个国家的人都在欢庆节日的到来。

没有人确切地知道该节日起源于何时何地。传说很久以前有一个叫做年的怪兽，每年春天都袭击中国的各个村庄，吃掉所遇到的一切东西——人、家畜、植物和古怪的建筑。有一年春天，当年来的时候，村民们在他们的家门上贴上红纸，并把竹子放到火里烧。年非常害怕鲜艳的颜色和竹子燃烧时发出的噼噼啪啪的响声，转身逃跑了。现在汉语中的年对应的就是 year 这个单词。

从那一天起，中国人在新年除夕在外面贴红纸和挂灯笼而且制造出巨大的声响。在火药发明之后，鞭炮取代了竹子，而今人们认为声音越大越好。

在春节前几天，每家每户都大扫除，因为在新年当天清扫会把一年的好运扫走。打碎碟子或使用尖锐的东西被认为会走霉运。

在除夕夜，一旦全家人都聚齐了，食物就成了焦点。人们会准备好多美味佳肴，通常要吃鱼，因为鱼的谐音是“余”。

孩子们尤其喜欢收红包的习俗。红包里包着作为礼物的钱，是家里的长辈们给未婚的亲戚的。

元宵节

在中国，农历第一个月的十五日是一个重要的节日，有各种各样的灯展。灯的颜色和形状各异。用纸、薄纱、丝绸或塑料制成各种形状，如鱼、青蛙、马、兔子、玫瑰花、莲花甚至是神仙。每年的灯展都以一个动物为主题，动物是由农历年来的确定的。例如，在龙年，以龙为主题的灯随处可见。灯展是历史上一直流传下来的习俗。近年来，生活水平提高了，全国各地都有各种各样豪华的灯展。在这些场合，明月照耀着数百盏彩灯，色彩斑斓，十分适合照相。除了灯展，灯节还有戏剧、烟花、杂技和舞蹈。舞蹈总是中国传统舞蹈：舞龙舞、耍狮子、跑旱船、跳莲花舞。

根据传统，在灯节的晚上每个家庭都吃元宵。元宵象征着合家团圆、友爱和幸福，它是糯米面团，里面包着糖和豆沙等甜馅。因此灯节又叫元宵节。除了元宵，人们还准备丰盛的晚餐以表示春节庆祝的结束。

中秋节

中秋节是农历八月十五，因为农历八月是中秋而十五号是八月的中间一天。那天晚上月亮比其他任何晚上都亮。在中国，满月象征家人团圆，这就是为什么那天又被称为“团圆日”。

在古代中国，学者们认为月亮是明亮、纯洁、美好的象征。过去的诗人写了许多诗词来赞美月亮。月亮不仅给作家带来灵感而且也是许多神话传说的源泉。最流行的神话是关于嫦娥的故事。嫦娥飞上月亮并在月宫里生活，四周有花草树木环绕。人们认为她喜欢月亮的悠闲与宁静。但是有时她也思念地球上的生活。

节日期间，人们吃月饼，月饼由面粉和糖、莲子粉等甜馅做成。在这个节日里一家人聚在一起祈福、吃水果和月饼。根据传统，按照家庭成员人数的多少把月饼平均切分成若干份。赏月是庆祝中秋的一个重要组成部分。晚上，人们待在外面欣赏满月，享受安宁平静带来的喜悦，人们开始唱歌背诵著名诗句。节日期间处处体现传统，节日的实质是家庭生活的和谐与幸福，这是大家的共识。

第9单元

课文A 武夷山之旅

武夷山风景区位于中国东南沿海的福建省北部。它是典型的丹霞地貌，位于武夷山北段的西南坡。它的主要景点是九曲溪和三十六峰。溪水从山上蜿蜒流下，而三十六峰全都是红砂岩。最高峰为大王峰，矗立在九曲溪的河口处，也有神女峰和钓鱼台，它们在水中的倒影构成了绿水与红山的鲜明对比。

由于气候温暖湿润，武夷山植被丰富，野生动物种类繁多，有数千种亚热带植物、稀有花木和珍稀动物。

2000多年来，帝王将相、文人墨客都来武夷山祭祀、旅游或讲学，留下300多处历史遗迹，如寺庙、书院、亭和塔。在山脚下有汉代古城遗址和宋窑。在三十六峰上，刻有题字的有700多处。

游客们可以乘竹筏欣赏九曲溪沿岸如画的山水景色。古人说：“武夷山的风景令人赞叹不已；这里堪称是人间仙境。”这里没有受到污染，有蓝天、绿水和清新的空气，来此一游，可以使你身心愉悦。

武夷山因其自然景观与人文景观的融合而闻名，不仅是中国的也是世界上的宝贵的自然

文化遗产。武夷山的历史遗迹包括 3800 年前的悬棺，西汉时期的闽越国古城遗址，187 个道观、佛学院和儒学院以及 400 多处南北朝时文人墨客留下的摩崖石刻。

武夷山地区也是在华南拥有大量生物资源的地方之一，有 3000 多植物种群，包括 1000 种树木。福建两种名茶之一武夷岩茶也产于此地。进入武夷山，你就会发现自己身处茶的世界里。武夷山峰，云雾缭绕，日照时间短，土壤和水均未被污染。所有这些条件是岩茶质量的保证。有 100 多种茶叶，其中大红袍是最著名的。大红袍生长在天心岩附近的九龙阁，产量极低。为了方便游客，武夷山风景区管理局把九龙阁列为一个景点。游客可以乘车到九龙阁入口。

在景区每个休息处都有岩茶出售。因种类不同茶的价格也有所不同。坐在武夷山中竹桌旁边的竹椅上呷着岩茶，人人都有一种愉快的轻松感。为了让游客更好地了解武夷山岩茶，景区保留了几个茶加工作坊。游客可以看到加工茶的各个过程而且可以动手体验茶是如何加工的。另外，当地人还进行茶道表演、唱歌、跳舞来宣传当地茶文化。

游客会发现武夷山值得一游。

课文B 桂林

“我曾经走访过 80 多个国家和 100 多座城市。我没有发现哪个城市能超越桂林之美。桂林确实是中国的一颗璀璨的明珠。”

——美国前总统理查德·尼克松

“中国的其他任何地方都无法与桂林相媲美。”

——美国前总统比尔·克林顿

游览桂林的十大理由

- 桂林是一个传说中风景绝佳的地方，桂林有世界上最有代表性的喀斯特地貌，有树木青翠的山林、清澈的河流、神秘的洞穴与怪石。
- 进行一次从桂林到阳朔的漓江游，体会一种如同行走在中国水墨风景画中的新鲜感觉。
- 骑着脚踏车穿过稻田、果园、宁静的村庄和不同寻常的阳朔喀斯特群峰。
- 到全国著名的阳朔西街的酒吧或咖啡馆去休闲，享受那种平和的气氛。
- 观看绝美的“印象·刘三姐”——中国最大规模的以漓江和十二峰为背景的天然舞台上的户外表演。
- 在城区漫步，品尝著名的桂林米线，晚上进行“两河四湖”环城游。
- 探游群峰点缀的河川公园，惊叹大自然母亲的杰作，如象鼻山、骆驼山。
- 游览奇特的喀斯特溶洞，如芦笛岩，了解钟乳石是如何形成的。
- 到龙生县龙骨稻台远足，在壮族平安村过夜。
- 到布满形形色色的如壮族、苗族、瑶族和侗族等少数民族部落的山区去徒步旅行。

第 10 单元

课文A 茶道

茶最初是在 8 世纪从中国引进的，许多年来逐渐发展成为一门茶道艺术。16 世纪最伟大的茶道大师千利休（1522—1591）发展了茶道精神的四个基本原则，即和谐、尊重、纯洁和

宁静。人们认识到通过饮茶每一次相会都是一个难逢的时机，这种时机将不可能再现。因此要仔细品味饮茶给参与者所带来的每一方面的乐趣。

茶道

茶道是赏心悦目的一系列活动，是在茶食店（一座房屋或一个房间，在其中举行仪式）。仪式包括迎客、在石制的水盆中用淡水净手、走过茶室的地面、观看沏茶、品尝食品与喝茶。

茶园、洗茶器室与茶食店一起提供了最好的物质与精神的场所来表达热情好客。还有与佛教禅宗理念相关的宗教意义。在喝茶时，全身心地投入其中，体验此时此地心无杂念从而可以感受整个世界。

这种仪式像一部戏剧，包括两幕和幕间休息。在 *shoza*，即第一幕戏中，客人进入茶食店，吃一顿便饭。然后，客人到花园小憩一会儿，即“幕间休息”，等待主人把他们请回来。第二幕叫做 *goza*，首先主人为客人准备浓茶，然后再一次准备炭火煮淡茶。这一切做完之后，最后一次，主人和客人安静而充满尊敬地相互鞠躬，客人告辞。

第 11 单元

课文A 创建一个购物天堂

每年都有数百万的外国人和海外华侨来中国出差、观光或在经济、贸易、体育、科学和文化等领域进行交流。许多人选购了纪念品和礼物，满载而归。实际上很多好不容易到中国来的人不可能不去购物。中国的商品种类繁多，令人眼花缭乱，如古玩、珠宝、中国画、书法、筷子、服装、食品、中国专利药品和滋补品，不一而足。事实上，商店逐渐成为支撑中国酒店业的支柱之一。它们给客人带来诸多方便和乐趣，也给该产业带来了丰厚的利润。

艺术品和工艺品是纪念品商店的主要商品，它们不仅开阔了国内外购物者的眼界也成为人们所喜爱的商品。玉雕具有古雅、浑朴、玲珑剔透的民族风格。景泰蓝，在国内外都享有盛誉，造型美观优雅、设计华丽雅致、色泽光润。瓷器也许算是中国人最伟大的发明了。瓷都景德镇的瓷器被认为是“白如玉、薄如纸、明如镜、韵如‘琴’（一种中国古代乐器）”。丝绸和刺绣，做工绝妙、图案繁多、色彩和谐，有独特的民族风格，是在中国非常畅销的商品。

许多游客也对某些地方工艺品很感兴趣，如小雕像、檀香扇、剪纸、脸谱、风筝、贝壳雕等等。总之，中国不仅文化艺术历史悠久而且也是购物天堂。难道我们不应该帮助客人们带着更加美好的回忆和纪念品回家吗？

所有的这一切为旅游商店创造了绝佳的机会。为了满足游客们日益增长的购物需求，服务人员不仅应该了解商品、价格、顾客，具有整洁怡人的外貌，掌握工作程序，也应该具有全心全意为宾客服务的正确态度。“努力使每个顾客都有宾至如归的感觉并且体会到物有所值”。这是旅游业的目标。

课文B 中国最畅销的商品

在中国最好买什么？以下是几点建议。

中国市场越来越繁荣。购物者将会发现许多在纽约、东京和巴黎能够买到的东西，在北京、上海、广州和武汉等中国城市也可以买到。然而，许多具有中国特色的商品在世界其他地方却不容易买到。基于多年的导游经验，推荐下列商品供您选购。

1. 古玩、绘画、书法

这些东西可以使人对古老的中华文明略见一斑。它们既是可供欣赏的艺术品也是明智的投资。

2. 丝绸

中国是丝绸之乡，在这里你可以买到真正的纯丝绸，可以作为送人的完美的礼物。到丝绸加工厂参观往往会成为快乐的购物之旅。

3. 手工艺品

包括景德镇瓷器、北京景泰蓝、云南大理石、贵州蜡染、青田石刻、黄杨木雕、上海捏面等。

4. 中药

5. 纪念品

由于劳动力廉价，中国的手工艺纪念品价格也特别低廉。

你喜欢什么呢？

第 12 单元

课文A 欢送辞

女士们、先生们：

晚上好！

今晚我们很高兴能够在此表达对英国朋友的谢意并为大家送行。北京之旅已经接近尾声。我们希望北京给大家留下了深刻的印象。

首先，我代表中国国际旅行社，对过去五天来大家给予的理解与合作表示感谢，这对顺利完成本次旅游计划是不可或缺的。在各个场合大家都很准时，每当我们有事情告诉大家时，大家都认真聆听。而且，你们都提出了善意的建议来提高我们的导游服务水平。我想说你们是我带过的最好的旅游团队。

大家在北京时，已经游览了北京最著名的景点。我们登上了长城并诧异于其雄伟壮观。我们欣赏了故宫里精美的陈列品以及宏大的皇家建筑。我们漫步于颐和园，欣赏如画的山水风景与典雅的庭园，放松身心。在天安门广场，我们看到了世界上最大的城市广场，见证了中国的进步与繁荣。

离别既忧伤又夹杂着甜蜜。正如你们所看到的，北京正在飞速发展。当你们将来故地重游时，北京一定会发生翻天覆地的变化。我希望将来还为大家导游。

再一次对你们给予的合作与支持表示感谢。

一路顺风！

课文B 旅客须知

预定再确认

持有不确定日期机票的乘客在搭乘飞机之前必须预定座位。这种票在预定的时候没有优先权。已经预定转机或返程票的国际航班旅客如果在转机地或返程地停留 72 个小时以上，必须在飞机起飞前 72 个小时对机票进行再确认。未能进行确认的，其预定的座位将被取消。在转机地或返程地停留 72 个小时以下的国际航班旅客不必对其预定机票进行再确认。

办理登机手续

乘客必须提前到达机场以便办理各种手续。乘客必须在规定时间内到达指定的机场。国内乘客要出示身份证和机票来办理登机。外国乘客应当出示机票和旅游证件办理出境和登机手续。飞机离港时间不会因迟到乘客而推迟。如果乘客的旅游证件不符合规定，未能按时办理必须的出境和登机手续，应自行承担一切损失。

安全检查

根据政府法规，中国航空公司有权对乘客的人身以及行李进行检查。检查过程中如果发现任何乘客或其行李存在危险，中国航空公司将依照政府的有关规定进行处理。如果有人拒绝检查，中国航空公司将不准其登机。

行李

您携带的行李只能是私人物品；商业样品可以携带，只要您安排其抵达机场的时间不晚于当地海关所规定的时间。

在空中携带或运输途中有潜在危险的物品，应当交给有关承运人妥善安排。在航程中所必须的或适当的医疗和卫生用品（如发胶、香水、含酒精的药物）可以携带，但是可携带的数量有限。

Appendix *D*

Keys

Unit 1

Listening:

Task 1

1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T

Task 3

- (1) On behalf of (2) warm (3) opportunity (4) join (5) health

Speaking:

1. Wanda speaking
2. can I help you
3. When would you like to travel
4. OK, I'll check
5. What time would you like to leave
6. There's a flight that leaves at 9:10
7. It takes 2 hours 25 minutes
8. Is it just yourself that's traveling
9. Could I just take some details
10. which hotel have you chosen
11. is it a single room
12. how would you like to pay

Unit 2

Listening:

Task 3:

- (1) a local guide (2) surroundings (3) food and beverage
(4) Money Exchange Desk (5) curious about

Speaking:

1. a 2. c 3. e 4. d 5. b

Unit 3

Listening:

Task 2

4. T 5. T 6. F 7. F 8. T

Task 3

(1) meal of the day (2) liquor (3) seafood (4) accompanied (5) course

Speaking:

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. e 5. d

Unit 4

Listening:

Task 1

1. T 2. T 3. F

Speaking:

1. Would you wait for a minute
2. keep them well
3. We will meet at the theatre at 6
4. Generally speaking, the park is a window on the world history, a window on the world civilization and a window on the world's tourist attraction as well
5. This is the Area of Asia. That is the Area of America
6. Do you have a good time today

Unit 5

Listening:

Task 1

(1) place (2) forbidden (3) heaven (4) pray for (5) wooded park
(6) religious purpose (7) square (8) conception

Task 3

4. F 5. T 6. T

Speaking:

1. It's about 6,000 kilometers long
2. construction of the Great Wall first began during the Warring States Period about 2,500 years ago
3. he decided to have the various sections of the walls linked up and also extended
4. The Great Wall, we shall see at Badaling was rebuilt in the *Ming* Dynasty
5. beacons
6. send smoke signals from the tower as an alarm
7. How high is it
8. an ancient Chinese saying goes: 'You cannot be called a hero if you have never been to the Great Wall!'

Unit 6

Listening:

Task 2

- (1) ponds (2) separated (3) writing poetry (4) rain
(5) sun (6) displays (7) style (8) plants

Task 3

4. F 5. F 6. T 7. F

Speaking:

1. Ladies and gentlemen, today we're going to visit the Summer Palace
2. It is situated in the western suburb of *Beijing*
3. How was it built
4. How many sections does it consist of
5. It covers 290 hectares
6. How does it get its name

Unit 7

Listening:

Task 2

- (1) 6th (2) borders (3) A.D.67 (4) two types (5) share

Task 3

4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T

Speaking:

1. What is the meaning of 'Lingyin Temple'
2. Laughing Buddha
3. Who is that Buddha carrying an umbrella
4. Lotus is a symbol of purity, for the lotus retains its cleanliness and purity even while growing out of mud
5. The mirror is a symbol of wisdom and brightness. It can expel evil and avoid danger

Unit 8

Listening:

Task 1

- (1) customs (2) Mid-autumn Festival (3) celebrate (4) 1,200 (5) legend
(6) beliefs (7) entertainment (8) spectators

Task 3

1. F 2. F 3. T

Speaking:

1. We will go to see programs by Chinese Acrobatic Circus
2. some of them won gold medals in various well-known international acrobatic contests

3. magic shows
4. tightrope walking
5. the flying trapeze acts
6. They are skillful acrobats
7. It is funny and relaxing
8. He is making faces to the audience
9. How do you think of the programs tonight
10. The programs are typically Chinese

Unit 9

Listening:

Task 1

- (1) due to (2) ancient legacy (3) The tour package (4) highlights (5) precious

Task 3

1. T 2. F 3. T

Speaking:

1. Greeting-the-Guest Pine
2. sheer rocks, seas of cloud and hot springs
3. Lotus peak
4. Tiandu Peak and Guang ming Summit
5. but after seeing the scenery of Mt. *Huang*, the five are secondary
6. Of course

Unit 10

Listening

Task 1

- (1) Chinese medicine (2) remain in balance (3) salons (4) sore (5) outlets

Task 2

1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F

Speaking:

1. I also happen to there
2. I think that swimming is a sort of relaxation during the trip
3. They do not charge for the use of the towels and soap
4. the temperature in the pool today is about 22 degrees centigrade
5. they change the water of the indoor swimming pool every other day

Unit 11

Listening

Task 1

- (1) relatives (2) goods available (3) variety (4) five categories

(5) be found (6) warning (7) red seal (8) 1795

Speaking:

1. What do you recommend
2. May I show you around
3. It's a tea set, made in *Jingdezhen*
4. Let me wrap it up for you
5. Here is the change and the receipt

Unit 12

Listening:

Task 2

4. T 5. F 6. T

Task 3

(1) 27 km (2) two terminals (3) departure board (4) airport tax
(5) 50 (6) collected (7) scheduled flight time (8) vary

Speaking:

1. When does the plane take off
2. Carry-on baggage
3. It's very nice of you to say so
4. It's more important to learn from real life
5. Come again to China
6. I hope you'll come to China again. Bon Voyage

参考文献

- [1] 周毅.《旅游英语教程》. 成都: 四川大学出版社, 2004.
- [2] 魏国富.《实用旅游英语教程》. 上海: 复旦大学出版社, 2002.
- [3] 吴云、王蓓.《美心英语》. 上海: 学林出版社, 2004.
- [4] 范红育、刁力人.《旅游英语》. 北京: 电子工业出版社, 2007.
- [5] 程丛喜.《导游英语》. 武汉: 武汉大学出版社, 2005.
- [6] 冯玮.《新编导游英语》. 武汉: 武汉大学出版社, 2007.
- [7] 吴云、邵华.《饭店情景英语》. 上海: 学林出版社, 2005.
- [8] 赵宝国、谭晓蓉.《21 世纪实用旅游英语教程》. 上海: 学林出版社, 2005.
- [9] Peter Strutt.《朗文旅游英语(初级)》. 天津: 南开大学出版社, 2007.
- [10] Peter Strutt.《朗文旅游英语(中级)》. 天津: 南开大学出版社, 2007.
- [11] Peter Strutt.《朗文旅游英语(高级)》. 天津: 南开大学出版社, 2007.